

A most worthy

and famous vvorke, bothe ple-  
sant and profitable, conteynynge  
the longe and cruell warres  
betweene the Gothes, and  
the valiant Romayne  
Emperours, for the  
possession of  
Italy.

With the vvvonderful chan-  
ces that hapned to both na-  
tions : written in the  
Italian tongue,  
And newly Translated  
into English,  
By A. G.

Imprinted at London, by  
Wylliam Hovv, for  
George Bucke.

Alfred North

B 945.02  
B 833



To the ryghte ho-  
norable Sir William Still  
Knyghte principall Secretarie to the  
Queenes Maiestie and Maister of  
her hyghnesse Court of wardes  
and liueries, Arthur Golding  
witheth continuance of  
health, with encrease  
of honour.



As vines to  
the extent the bet-  
ter to prosper and  
preserue their fruite  
to the vse & plea-  
sure of man, require the staye of  
trees that bee stronger then  
themselves: Euen so it beho-  
ueth them that inende to put  
forth any worke to the behoofe  
and commoditie of others, to  
throude themselves vnder the  
fauour of some suche person, for  
a. li. whole

## The Epistle

whose sake their doing may be  
the better liked and accepted of  
all men.

The whiche thing thys my  
rude and vnpolished transla-  
tion of the hystoꝛye of Leonard  
Arcetine right well perceauyng,  
at such tyme as being fully fini-  
shed & ended it was nowe rea-  
die to set fote out of doores and  
to commit it selfe to the wyde  
world beholding it self spoyled  
of hys Romaine garment and  
turned into a playne Englyshe  
rote, beganne to be somewhat a-  
bashed and to loke about hym  
for some fauourable patrone vn-  
der whose protection it myght  
aduenture to goe abroad. But  
to who rather ought it to pre-  
sent it selfe then to hym vnder  
whose shadowe it should come to  
stand.

## Dedicatoyle.

Whose roote it hath bene har  
broughed and tollerred fro the  
infancie, vntyll suche tyme as  
it came to his full growth. And  
therefore although the wante  
of tyme penning and eloquent  
inditing of the hypholye in our  
language, enforce me to con  
fesse it unworthye to trouble  
your honour being otherwyse  
busied in moste weyghtye af  
fayres of thys Realme: yet  
notwithstandyng partly in co  
syderation of my Dutye, but  
more vppon confydence of your  
clemencye, I haue taken bold  
nesse to dedicate the same vnto  
you: so muche the rather, in  
as muche as the worke entrea  
teth of serious and weyghtye  
matters.

a.iii.

Wher

## The Epistle

Wherein if it may please your hon-  
our so to accepte my doing, as  
that this my simple Translati-  
on maye vnder your fauourable  
protectiō be hold to shewe it self  
abrode, I shall not only thinke  
my trauell abundantly recom-  
penced, but also accompt it for  
a further encouragement, to  
geue the aduenture vpon some  
greater matter hereafter. Fini-  
shed at your house in Strand  
the second of Aprill. 1563.

By your honours at commaun-  
dement Arthur Goldyng.

# TO THE READER.

**I**f Diuine as this worke of  
Leonard Aretine entreateth of  
the repullying of the Gothes out  
of Italy by the Captaines of the impe-  
roure of Constantinople, touchinge  
lightly by the way the cause of their ar-  
riuall in the same countrey. It seemeth  
expedient to make further rehearfall  
of the cause of their first enterance with  
in the boundes of the Romaine Empire,  
& of their successe in the same through  
which they grew so strong in procelle  
of tyme, that they not only bearest it of  
diuerse prouinces & members perhap-  
ping thereto, but also gatte into their  
handes Italy it self with the Ilands ad-  
ioynning, making theselues Lordes and  
Paisters of Rome sometime soueraigne  
lady & Emperesse of the world. In declar-  
ation wherof the matter it self will some-  
what minister occasion to speake of the  
Crules and of Odoacer out of whose  
handes the Gothes wrested the dominion  
a.iiij. and

and possession of Italy: and finally of  
the two politike martiall and fortu-  
nate Captaynes Belisarius and Nar-  
ses whose after eyghtene yeares war-  
res recovered the same againe to  
the Emperre. The wherby thynges  
I will once againe as bryefely as the  
matter will permitt. The Gothes  
therefore by the assertion and consents  
of allowable Authoys, enhabyted some  
tyme beyonde the ryuer Rhyne or Dan-  
nub in the Countrey called in olde  
tyme Dacia nowe named Valachia:  
So that the Ostrogothes or Easterne  
gothes bordering vppon the coaste of  
Pontus Euxinus, ( of whom thys  
presente history entreateth ) are ac-  
counted for the Gettes and Triballes:  
and the Visigothes or Westerngothes  
enhabytyng more into the tyme and  
mayne lande towarde the head of Da-  
nub and Germanie, are accounted  
for the Daces or Daues. Nowe a-  
bout the ycare of our Lorde God. 373.

Now called  
Mare maiore

## To the Reader.

In the tyme of Valens Emperour of  
the East, a certayne people of \* Scythia named Hunnes assembling them  
selues in greate number, vnder the  
conducte of their Captayne Cadaris  
inuaied the Easterngoths & brought  
them in subiection. The Western-  
gothes streyken wyth feare at the so-  
dayne misfortune of their neighbours,  
abandonyng theyr natyue Countrey  
sent Ambassadors to the Emperour  
Valens, profering to receaue the  
Christen fayth, and to set themselves  
as a wall & bulwarke to the Romaine  
Empyre agaynst the assautes of the  
cruell Hunnes and other Barbarous  
nations, so that he woulde suffer them  
to passe the ryuer Danow and geue  
them Assyria to inhabyte. Vppon this  
condition their requeste was graun-  
ted, and they receaued both Christen  
Religion and also gouernours of the  
Emperour.

\* Now called  
Tartarie.

A.B.

Through



## To the Reader.

Through the misgouernement and ex-  
torcion of whō they were so bered, that  
they made insurrection agaynst þe Em-  
pyre, subdued Syria & Thrace over-  
came thempour in battel & burnt him  
in a cotage tohere he had hidde himself,  
and finally besieged Constantinople.  
Nevertheless afterwarde as well ap-  
peased and pacified by the vertuous &  
vpright gouernement, as vanquished &  
subdued by the force & puissance of The-  
odosius (who succeded Valens) they  
submitted themselves agayne to þe Ro-  
maine Emperre, & setued in the warres  
at commaundement by the space of .xxxv.  
yeares, untill suche tyme as Stilico  
(trayterously practising the confusion  
of Honorius sonne of the sayd Theo-  
dosius, to the entent to haue made bys  
own sonne Eucherius Emperour) by  
puttyng them out of wages, & defraun-  
ding them of their pensions, compelled  
them to rebell agayne. Whereupon ta-  
kyng weapon in hande, they invaded  
Pannonie, & there makynge one Alari-  
cicus



## To the Reader.

ricus a noble and valiant gentleman King, wasted all Dannonie, Thrace, & Sclanonie, with all the countreys bordering vpon Italye, and synally after great slaughter both geuen and receaued, spoiled al Italy with fyre & sword, sacked Rome, and conquered Spayne, where they also settled themselves, and within fewe yeares after grew to such wealth authoritie & puissance, that the yonger Valentinian Emperoure of Rome (of whom mention shalbe made in the begynnyng of this worke) enterpyng in leage with their King Theodochus, vsed bys ayde agaynst Attila King of the Hunnes. For the Hunnes lyke good bloudhoundes following freshly the pursute of their foresaid victorie agaynst the Easterngothes partly moued of enuye towarde the state of the Romaine Empyre, and partly solicited thereto by the traytour Rufine whom Theodosius had left as gouernour and protector of his other sonne Arcadius Emperoure of the Caste,) associating

## To the Reader.

associatynge vnto them the sayed Easterngothes, the Gepides, the Erules, and other Barbarous people to the number of fyue thousande men, vnder the conducte of Attila (worthely surnamed the scourge of God) afflicted the dominions and prouinces of the Romayne Emperre, and in especially wasted and spoiled Italye, rasing her Cyties to the grounde, and bearyng downe all thynges before them lyke a moste vpolente and horrible tempeste. After whose retorne into Pannonie, the seate of their kyngdome, Attila immediately dyed. Whereuppon ensued dyscord betwene the Hunnes and the Easterngothes, in whiche the Gothes drawing to their parte: the Gepides, preuayled, and drave the Hunnes oate of Pannonie backe agayne into Tartarie from whence they first came. Whobest they left theyr name styll behynde them to the Countrye, the whiche after them is called

## To the Reader.

called Hungarie vnto thys daye.  
Aboute the same tyme that the Go-  
thes had dyuen the Hunnes oute of  
Hungarie, it fortuned that one Aspar  
a noble man of greates power and au-  
thoritye proclaymed hys sonne Arda-  
buris Ceaſer agaynſt Leo then Em-  
peroure of Conſtantinople. In ſo-  
muche that Leo was fayne to aſſem-  
ble a power and encounter wpth hym  
wpth in the Cytie. In the whyche  
conſtate Aspar and Ardaburis beyng  
ouercome were yelded to the Empe-  
roure and put both to death. The  
Gothes taking occaſion of advantage  
bypon thys ciuill warre, waſhed all  
ſclauonie and neuer reſted vntyll ſuch  
tyme as Leo had graunted them Hun-  
gare (from whence they had bitter-  
lye expulſed the ſonnes of Attila) to-  
gether with Wiſia to haue and holde  
freely withoute tribute or ſubiectiō to  
the Emperre. Vppon whyche con-  
dition truce was taken, and ſo bet-  
ter obſeruyng thereof.

## To the Reader.

Theodenur King of the Gothes gave  
hys sonne Theoderich in hostage vnto  
Leo . . It was not long after but that  
there fel grudge & consequently warre  
betwene Theodenur and hys brother  
Malanur wherin Malanur was slaine.  
By meanes wherof it came to passe,  
that Theodenur enioyed quietly the  
whole and entier possesſion of all Dacia,  
Spasia, and both the Pannonies . Leo  
therfore fearyng the power & puissance  
of Theodenur, deliuered him hys sonne  
Theoderich. Theodenur in recompence  
of that good turne, tourned the truce y  
was taken betwene them into conti-  
nual peace, and so the Gothes ceased to  
moleſt the Emppre . In the meane sea-  
son after muche alteration & vsurpynge  
by Tirantes, Augustulus a very chyld  
the sonne of Drestes a sage and wyse  
Senatour of Rome, beyng by fauoure  
of the Citizens of Nauenna proclay-  
med emperour of the Weste, to the en-  
tent to refreshe and ease the Emppre of  
the long continued trouble that it had  
suffered

## To the Reader.

suffered many yeares before, (by the  
counsell of his father Dives) tooke  
peace with the Vandales in Affricke,  
who had alwayes since their first com-  
ing, bene euill neyghbours to the  
Empyre. But whyles all was calme  
and quiet on the south, beholde an he-  
deous and horrible tempeste riseth  
agaynst hym out of the North. The  
rules and Earinges the miserable re-  
liques of the armye of Attila, (who af-  
ter that the sayd Attila was dead & his  
sonnes dyuen away, being vanquished  
by the Eastern gothes & compelled backe  
againe toward Tartarie w<sup>th</sup> the Hunnes,  
had a while helde themselves in quiet  
about the mouth of the Rhyer Danow)  
allured with the former spoyle of Italy  
(to whose utter vndoing wel nye all the  
warres that were made in those dayes  
byd tend,) came backe agayne and con-  
querryng it, slew Dives and deposed  
Augustulus, in whom the honorable  
and renowned name of Augustus de-  
cided the. 117. yeare after that Octavianus  
Caeſar

*Handwritten notes:*  
Cassiodorus  
D  
S  
B  
C

## To the Reader.

Ceser hys self had that name and title of honour geuen vnto hym of the Senate and people of Rome . By meanes wherof it came to passe, that Italy and Rome became after ward the common pray of Barbarous kinges, so y<sup>e</sup> he that coulde make hymself strongest enioyed the possession therof. For Odoacer & his Erules had scarcely yet fully settled theselues, when y<sup>e</sup> Easterngothes (who after the decease of Theodenur were now vnder y<sup>e</sup> gouernement of his sone Theoderich) enuying y<sup>e</sup> prosperity of y<sup>e</sup> Erules, & therewith calling to remembrance how their own countryme the Westerngothes had already conquered Spayne, y<sup>e</sup> Vandales Affricke, the Frenchm<sup>n</sup>, & Burgonions Gallia, y<sup>e</sup> Barons Britaine, & other nations of ther pleasaunt fertile countreies, earnestly besought and required their king, to leade them into Italye to the extent as well to aduance the same and renoune of their Cheualrie, as also to place theselues in y<sup>e</sup> countrey whiche as  
it

## To the Reader.

It was the head and soueraigne of all o-  
thers, so had it also the report to be the  
most pleasant, welthie, and fertile of al  
the Regions of Europe. Theoderich  
albeit he were in manner constrained  
by his subiectes to doe the thinge that  
they requested, yet as one myndfull of  
the great benefites that his ancestors  
had receiued of ʒ Emperours of Con-  
stantinople, and of the honozable enter-  
tainment that he himselfe had had at  
suche tyme as he laye in hostage in the  
Emperours Court, he aduertised the  
Emperour Zeno therof, protesting ʒ  
he would doe nothing without his con-  
sent. Zeno who at that tyme stood in  
feare of Theoderich and the Gothes,  
(as one that so2 doubte least he should  
grow to strong for him in that parte of  
Europe, was fully determined before,  
to haue profered that vantage vnto him  
though no such question had bene ma-  
ned) gladly condescended to his petition  
& so2 the more honour created him Co-  
sull. Whereupon Theoderich and his  
b.i. countrye



## To the Reader.

countrimen with their wiues and chil-  
dren remoued into Itaiye, Of whose  
good successe and of the good successe of  
his posteritie in that countrie, together  
with their expulsiō or rather subdu-  
ing by the Imperialls, for as much as  
this Historie of Leonard Aretine doth  
at large entreate I will not be tedious  
in repeating the same. Howbeit it is to  
be vnderstanded that after the battell  
of Auertia where Tetras last kinge of  
the Gothes was slayne, althoughe  
some departed awayne with such thin-  
ges as they had according to covenant  
yet the greater part of them taried stil:  
y<sup>e</sup> which degenerating into y<sup>e</sup> name of  
Italians, lost both their empyre & own  
name for ever the lxxi. yere after their  
first coming into y<sup>e</sup> countrey vnder Theo-  
derich being y<sup>e</sup> yere of grace CCCC  
L. III. III. Some as concerninge the  
two noble and valiant captaines Be-  
lisarius and Harles the Conquerours  
and subduers of them, it is to be doub-  
ted whether the miserable misfortune  
of



## To the Reader.

of the one be more to be lamented, or  
the vniuersednesse and folly of the o-  
ther (if I maye terme the thyng accor-  
dyng to desert) be to be blamed. For  
Belisarius after that he had recouered  
Africke from the Vandales, vanquish-  
ed the Persians, fought prosperously  
agaynst the Hedes, abated the po-  
wer and pulled downe the hygh cou-  
rages of the Gothes openinge a waye  
of conquest to hys successor, and at-  
cheued so many haule enterpryses and  
Parciall Exploites that the glorious  
fame of hys doyniges did spredde hys re-  
nowne ouer all the worlde and made  
hys name immortall; in so muche  
that he was accompted as a perfecte  
and incomparable Mirour for all  
Captaynes to beholde, and a bette  
master of Cheualrye; whome  
neyther ambytion the common cor-  
rupter of noble hartes, nor the  
licentious libertie of the Campe,  
nor the instigatjons of myghty

## To the Reader.

Princes could withdraue from hys al-  
legians and promise made to the Em-  
perour Justinian. Was in the ende in  
hys olde dayes vppon lyghte suspicion  
wthoute pzoofe, by the same Empe-  
roure so: whom he had so often put hys  
lyfe in perill: to whom he had acquired  
so muche honour, whose fauour he had  
esteemed more then to raygne himselfe  
as an Emperour, depriued of both his  
eyes, and constrainned to begge hys  
bread miserably from doore to doore,  
an vnworthye rewarde so: so manye  
good debes and so muche good seruice  
done to the Emppre. And Parles the  
subduer of the Gothes and reducer of  
Italy to the Emppre when he had go-  
uerned it quiettlye manye yeres tog-  
ther to hys greate honour and admy-  
ration, at the laste (lyke a shrewd cow  
whiche when she hath geuen a good  
quantitie of mylke overthoweth the  
pable wth her hecle and spylleth the  
same) prouoked onely by the pzesump-  
tuous wordes of a bayne and enuious  
woman

## To the Reader.

Woman, weened suche a web (according to his owne wordes) as neyther she no; the Emperour were able to weare oute, no no; he hymselfe to vnbreaue agayne after he had ones putte it into the loome, though he dyd the beste he could to haue stayed it, so hard and difficult a matter is it to stoppe a mischief of the course, when it ones hath gotten the repnes in the necke, and hath set foote so;ward to runne the race. For the Lombardes begynne by hym in the extasie of his fume the rage called oute of Dannonie (which by that tyme was become the common receptacle of the enemyes of the Emperre) not onely wythin shorte tyme after hys decease broughte Italpe in subiection to them, but also syns that daye hytherto (whiche thyng neyther the Gothes, Vnnes, Vandales, Crules, no; anye other of the barbarous nations with their manyfolde and terrible assaultes were able to compasse and bynne to effecte) haue helde a poxion thereof as a

b. 111.

perpe.

## To the Reader.

perpetuall possession and inheritance  
to themselves, whych retaineth their  
name vnto this daye. But sozasmuch  
as these thinges were done somewhat  
after the suborning of the Bothes, and  
doe lytle or nothinge pertaine to the  
presente purpose of this Vistoye

I will not stand any lenger

oppon them, but reuise

the to the readynge

of myne

Author.

(\*)

# The preface of

Leonard Aretine, vnto his  
bookes of the warres in  
Italye against the  
Gothes, continued of  
the author



Althoughe it had  
bene a far greater  
pleasure to me, to  
haue wytten of  
the prosperous &  
flourishing estate of Italy, then  
of the slaughters and destruic-  
tion of it : yet notwithstanding  
forasmuch as the time re-  
quireth otherwyse, we also wil  
chaunge wyth the tyme & fol-  
low the mutabilitie of fortune  
reportinge in these bookes the  
inuations of the Gothes, & the  
warres through the which al-  
most all Italy was brought to

The Authours preface.

better ruine & destruction. Surely  
ly a sorrowfull matter, but yet  
for the knowledge of thinges  
done in those dayes, necessarie  
to be entreated of. For I can-  
not thinke but that when Xe-  
nophon of Athens that excellēt  
Clerke, dyd wyte of the bese-  
ging and fainishing of Athens  
and of the throwing downe of  
the walles of it, he was sorie in  
his harte that he had occasyon  
so to doe. And yet he wrote it,  
bycause he thought it expediēt  
that the remembrance of such  
thinges shuld not perishe. Ney-  
ther doth our Liuy deserue les  
praise when he reherceth & ta-  
king and burning of Rome by  
the frenchinen, then when he  
setteth out & famous triumph  
of Paulus Emilius over the  
Mace-

The Authours preface.

Macedones, or the noble conquestes of Scipio Africanus. For it is the dutie of an historie to put in writing all aduētures as well vnfortunate as fortunate. And therefore a man maye wythe þ best, but he must write be it good or bad as occasiō offereth. I assure you as I was inditinge these matters, albeit many things did greue me, for the ntier loue þ I beare to my native countrey, yet notwithstanding thys reason I had to comfort me, þ although Italy suffered at þ tūne most extreme miseries. yet at the length she not onely gate thupper hand & expulsed those forreine nations but also hath remayned from þ day to this most welthy & puissant both by sea and land, and  
b.v. that



The Authours preface.

that from that tyme forth her  
Cities haue flourished in ryches  
& aucthorie most abundantly,  
and doe flourish still at this ho-  
wer, thour and Dominion of  
the now stretching it self far of  
on al sides, so that the thinges  
that haue happened vnto her,  
seeme not so much to be laimen-  
ted as to be reioyced at, like vn-  
to Hercules whose greate ex-  
ploits made him more famous  
then ever he should haue bene  
yf he had not attempted those  
daungerous enterpises. I wil  
not speake of the great Cui-  
litie, good Nurture, Courte-  
sy, & trad of all Liberall arts &  
learning, of y<sup>e</sup> which Italy we-  
weth it self to be a natural mo-  
ther & a very nourice, for I will  
let y<sup>e</sup> comendations of her alon  
vntil anoty<sup>e</sup>r tyme. As concer-



The Authours preface.

ning & warres & we now must  
entreate of, there remained no  
mention of the aining & Latin  
writers onely there went a re-  
port fro man to mā & that very  
fleeter & obscure, & Belisarius &  
Narses captains of & emperour  
Justinian draue & Gothes out  
of Italy, but where or in what  
sort, or by what meanes, there  
was no inkling at al left in wri-  
ting. We came by & knowledge  
of the out of & grek Chronicles.  
Wherefore as I had don by ma-  
ny other thinges before, so also  
I endeavored to bring agayn to  
light these thinges beig well ny  
blurred & blotted out of memo-  
ry. And & so much & rather, by-  
cause & other stories for & most  
part do concern th'affaires & do-  
ings of strâgers, but this cōcer-  
neth wholly our owne matters.

## The Authours preface.

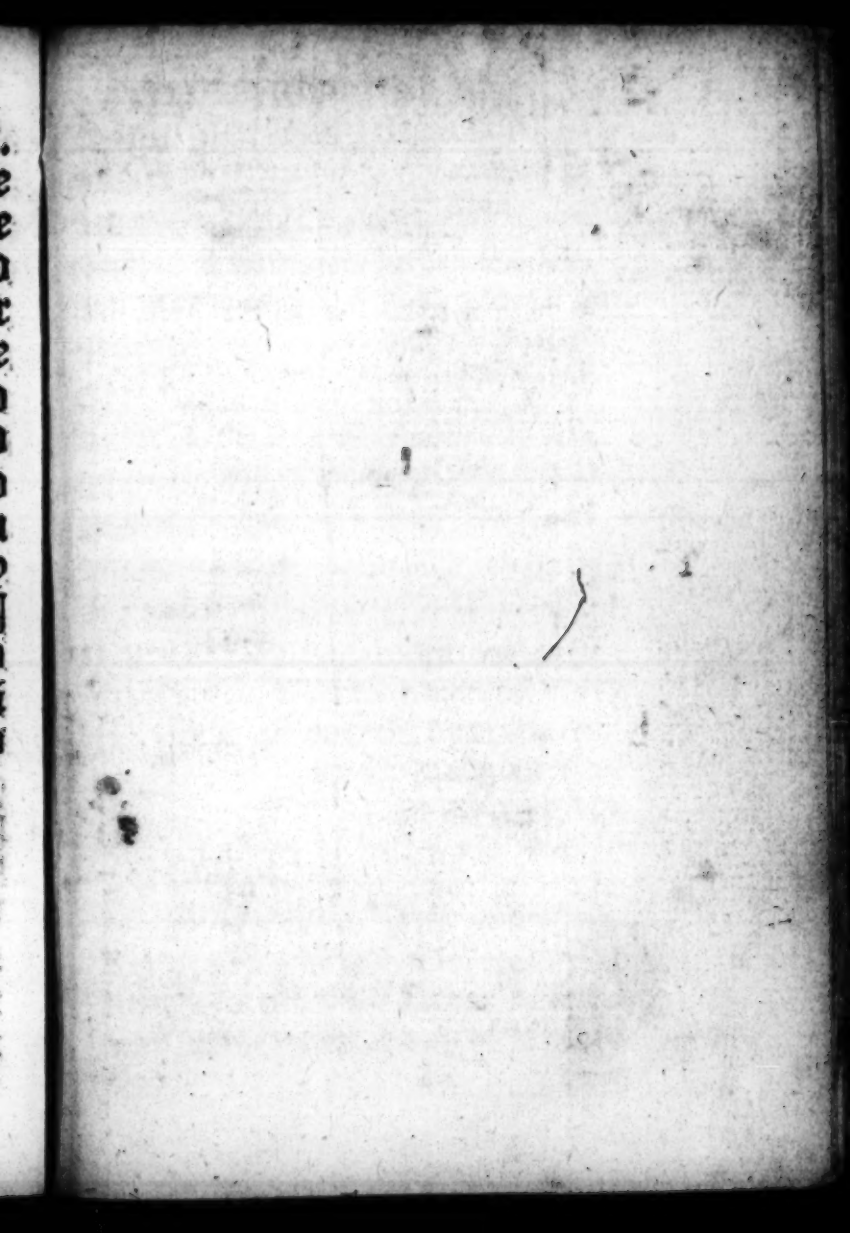
Wherein it maye be worthe a  
mans labour to seatch & peruse  
þ state of Italye in those daies  
what Cities, and what kind of  
people were in it what townes  
and cities were beseged, which  
were wonne and brought in  
subiectio, & in what places bat-  
tells were fought. For to know  
all these thynges it is a great  
prayse, and not to knowe the it  
is a foule shame. For it is a toke  
that a man loueth his country,  
not to be ignoraunt in thorigi-  
nall and proceedings therof, or  
whatsoever ells hath fortunèd  
vnto it in tyues past. Further-  
more þ knowledge of histories  
doth greatly delight the mynd  
bycause all we men doe of na-  
ture couit to know things, and  
also it bringeth great profit for  
as

The Authours p[re]face.

as much as it containeth & ex-  
amples of like affaires to what  
end they came, & gyueth experi-  
ens in many thyngs, through  
the which old men are accomp-  
ted wiser then yongmē, bicause  
they haue sene mo thynges in  
their liues time, and by experi-  
ens not only of their owne but  
also of other mens perilles, are  
made more ware, and therefore  
are able to giue better iudginēt  
and are wont to be led by bet-  
ter counsel. For whē they rede  
of the riches and Empires of &  
greatest kyngs and & puissan-  
test nations and perceyue how  
sone they com to decay, they vn-  
derstand by & by what a folly it  
is to boast & be proued for those  
things, whych no man is able  
to assure himself that they shall  
conti-

The Authours p̄face.

cōtinue with him vntill night.  
Thus doth an Historie make  
vs bothe more wyse and more  
modest in our dooinges. And  
therfore ryght reuerend father  
I determined to dedicate these  
Bookes vnto you, as well to  
thentent you might vnderstand  
my entier loue and affection to  
wardes you, as also that you  
myghte be as a Iudge of my  
worke and trauel, the which I  
shal thinke very well bestowed  
if so wyse and wel learned a mā  
as you are, doe allowe them and  
take them in good worthe.  
Whereuppon I wyll take  
occasion to goe in hand  
with the proesse of  
myne Historie.  
Farrewell.



f

b

# The fyrst Booke

of Leonard Aretine, concernyng the warres in Italy  
against the Gothes.

## The first Chapter.

The disposition of Augustulus, the diuision of the landes through Italy, the cause of the commying of the Gothes thither, and of their encounter with Odoacers Captaines.



At the tyme that Zenno was Emperour of Rome, the Gothes under the leading of Theodorich, determined to inuade Italy, lately be

fore sore afflicted with diuers robes and inuasions of barbarous people, and at that tyme oppressed with the tyranny of Odoacer: of the which thinges I purpose to entreate, repeating somewhat deper the state of those tymes, to the intent it may be known

A.s.

from



Of the warre of the  
from whence the Gothes first came,  
and what hope moued them to innade  
the Emppye.

The death of  
Valentinian.

After the death of the yonger Valentinian, who (as it is well ynough knowen) was slayne at Rome of hys owne Subiectes, the Emppye of the West beganne to wauer, and to bee as it were without hys hede or soule.

For as muche as there were at the same tyme in Italy, great armyes of foreyners raysed latelie before by Valentinian for feare of Attila, and afterwarde associated by the Romaynes agaynst the Vandales. These foreyners perceyvinge the empoueryshmente and weakenesse of the Emppye, and thereupon takynge courage, conspired together, and demaunded to haue the chiefe parte of the landes through all Italye deuyded amonge them.

The name of the Emppye remayned at that tyme in one Augustulus, whiche beynge but a verie chyld, was gouerned by hys father Orestes a Senator



## Gothes in Italy.

Senatour of Rome. Therefore at  
suche tyme as the menne of warre de-  
maunded a partition of the landes,  
and that Orestes beyng a wyse and  
sage personne wylthoodde they re-  
queste the Souldyours slewe hym, and  
fourthe wylth folowynge they Cap-  
taine Odoacer, camme to Rome  
and deposed Augustulus. By mea-  
nes whereof hauinge now the lawe  
in theyr owne hande, they deuyded the  
thyrde part of the landes among them  
Odoacer hauinge by thys meanes  
gotten the Soueraynetye, in hys  
owne name and in the name of the ar-  
mye ruled the Cytys at hys owne  
luste and pleasure.

Augustulus is  
deposed and  
Odoacer vi-  
sith.

Zeno also Gouvernour of the East  
Empyre lying at Constantynople, be-  
ganne to dread soore the power of  
Theodoric. For the Gothes that in-  
habited the vpper coaste of Thracia,  
hadde alreadye begonne to vere and  
disquiett the Countreys borderynge  
vpon them.

The cause of  
the commynge  
of the Gothes  
into Italy.

A.ij.

And

## Of the warre of the

And it was none other lyke, but that they woulde make some insurrection against the Romain Emperre. Where-  
vpon to the entent to delyuer hym-  
self and the countreys there aboutes  
from feare of the Gothes. He persua-  
ded Theodorich to passe into Italy,  
and to delyuer the cities there oute of  
the hands of the wrongfull withhol-  
ders of them. Induced with these per-  
suasion Theodorich remouyng out of  
Thrace, and leadyng with him the  
Gothes with their wyues and chyldren  
and al that ever they had through Syr-  
mum and Illyricum, went toward  
Italy: where at hys fyyst entraunce,  
the Captaines of Odoacer camme a-  
gainst him with their armies. The  
first battell betwixt them was fought  
not farre from the Citie of Aquileia,  
vpon the riuer Fontius. In the which  
conflict after a long and sharpe encou-  
ter, the Gothes gate the victorie, and  
putte the Captaynes of Odoacer to  
deggt.

The

# Gothes in Italy. 3.

The. ij. Chapter.

Theodorich kyng of the Gothes besiegeth Odoacer in Rauenna, the matter is ended by composition, each of them lyeth in wayte to destroye other, Theodorich preuenting Odoacer killeth hym at a banquet, by meanes whereof he obteyneth the soueraignitie of Italy, of the actes of Theodorich and of hys death.

**A**fter this, when the Gothes had wonne the cities there aboutes, and vanquished the power of their enemies in other places also, at length they besieged Odoacer in the Citie of Rauenna. The siege held the Gothes tack longer then they thought it would haue done at the firste, and that happened by reason of the situation of the place. For neither can Rauenna be easlye besieged vppon that syde that is towarde the sea, because it standeth hard vppon the shore, neither vppon that syde that is towarde the land, because it hath a dyche cut from the citie to the sea, and is compassed with

A. ij. certaine

no. 3. 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10. 11. 12. 13. 14. 15. 16. 17. 18. 19. 20. 21. 22. 23. 24. 25. 26. 27. 28. 29. 30. 31. 32. 33. 34. 35. 36. 37. 38. 39. 40. 41. 42. 43. 44. 45. 46. 47. 48. 49. 50. 51. 52. 53. 54. 55. 56. 57. 58. 59. 60. 61. 62. 63. 64. 65. 66. 67. 68. 69. 70. 71. 72. 73. 74. 75. 76. 77. 78. 79. 80. 81. 82. 83. 84. 85. 86. 87. 88. 89. 90. 91. 92. 93. 94. 95. 96. 97. 98. 99. 100. 101. 102. 103. 104. 105. 106. 107. 108. 109. 110. 111. 112. 113. 114. 115. 116. 117. 118. 119. 120. 121. 122. 123. 124. 125. 126. 127. 128. 129. 130. 131. 132. 133. 134. 135. 136. 137. 138. 139. 140. 141. 142. 143. 144. 145. 146. 147. 148. 149. 150. 151. 152. 153. 154. 155. 156. 157. 158. 159. 160. 161. 162. 163. 164. 165. 166. 167. 168. 169. 170. 171. 172. 173. 174. 175. 176. 177. 178. 179. 180. 181. 182. 183. 184. 185. 186. 187. 188. 189. 190. 191. 192. 193. 194. 195. 196. 197. 198. 199. 200. 201. 202. 203. 204. 205. 206. 207. 208. 209. 210. 211. 212. 213. 214. 215. 216. 217. 218. 219. 220. 221. 222. 223. 224. 225. 226. 227. 228. 229. 230. 231. 232. 233. 234. 235. 236. 237. 238. 239. 240. 241. 242. 243. 244. 245. 246. 247. 248. 249. 250. 251. 252. 253. 254. 255. 256. 257. 258. 259. 260. 261. 262. 263. 264. 265. 266. 267. 268. 269. 270. 271. 272. 273. 274. 275. 276. 277. 278. 279. 280. 281. 282. 283. 284. 285. 286. 287. 288. 289. 290. 291. 292. 293. 294. 295. 296. 297. 298. 299. 300. 301. 302. 303. 304. 305. 306. 307. 308. 309. 310. 311. 312. 313. 314. 315. 316. 317. 318. 319. 320. 321. 322. 323. 324. 325. 326. 327. 328. 329. 330. 331. 332. 333. 334. 335. 336. 337. 338. 339. 340. 341. 342. 343. 344. 345. 346. 347. 348. 349. 350. 351. 352. 353. 354. 355. 356. 357. 358. 359. 360. 361. 362. 363. 364. 365. 366. 367. 368. 369. 370. 371. 372. 373. 374. 375. 376. 377. 378. 379. 380. 381. 382. 383. 384. 385. 386. 387. 388. 389. 390. 391. 392. 393. 394. 395. 396. 397. 398. 399. 400. 401. 402. 403. 404. 405. 406. 407. 408. 409. 410. 411. 412. 413. 414. 415. 416. 417. 418. 419. 420. 421. 422. 423. 424. 425. 426. 427. 428. 429. 430. 431. 432. 433. 434. 435. 436. 437. 438. 439. 440. 441. 442. 443. 444. 445. 446. 447. 448. 449. 450. 451. 452. 453. 454. 455. 456. 457. 458. 459. 460. 461. 462. 463. 464. 465. 466. 467. 468. 469. 470. 471. 472. 473. 474. 475. 476. 477. 478. 479. 480. 481. 482. 483. 484. 485. 486. 487. 488. 489. 490. 491. 492. 493. 494. 495. 496. 497. 498. 499. 500. 501. 502. 503. 504. 505. 506. 507. 508. 509. 510. 511. 512. 513. 514. 515. 516. 517. 518. 519. 520. 521. 522. 523. 524. 525. 526. 527. 528. 529. 530. 531. 532. 533. 534. 535. 536. 537. 538. 539. 540. 541. 542. 543. 544. 545. 546. 547. 548. 549. 550. 551. 552. 553. 554. 555. 556. 557. 558. 559. 560. 561. 562. 563. 564. 565. 566. 567. 568. 569. 570. 571. 572. 573. 574. 575. 576. 577. 578. 579. 580. 581. 582. 583. 584. 585. 586. 587. 588. 589. 590. 591. 592. 593. 594. 595. 596. 597. 598. 599. 600. 601. 602. 603. 604. 605. 606. 607. 608. 609. 610. 611. 612. 613. 614. 615. 616. 617. 618. 619. 620. 621. 622. 623. 624. 625. 626. 627. 628. 629. 630. 631. 632. 633. 634. 635. 636. 637. 638. 639. 640. 641. 642. 643. 644. 645. 646. 647. 648. 649. 650. 651. 652. 653. 654. 655. 656. 657. 658. 659. 660. 661. 662. 663. 664. 665. 666. 667. 668. 669. 670. 671. 672. 673. 674. 675. 676. 677. 678. 679. 680. 681. 682. 683. 684. 685. 686. 687. 688. 689. 690. 691. 692. 693. 694. 695. 696. 697. 698. 699. 700. 701. 702. 703. 704. 705. 706. 707. 708. 709. 710. 711. 712. 713. 714. 715. 716. 717. 718. 719. 720. 721. 722. 723. 724. 725. 726. 727. 728. 729. 730. 731. 732. 733. 734. 735. 736. 737. 738. 739. 740. 741. 742. 743. 744. 745. 746. 747. 748. 749. 750. 751. 752. 753. 754. 755. 756. 757. 758. 759. 760. 761. 762. 763. 764. 765. 766. 767. 768. 769. 770. 771. 772. 773. 774. 775. 776. 777. 778. 779. 780. 781. 782. 783. 784. 785. 786. 787. 788. 789. 790. 791. 792. 793. 794. 795. 796. 797. 798. 799. 800. 801. 802. 803. 804. 805. 806. 807. 808. 809. 810. 811. 812. 813. 814. 815. 816. 817. 818. 819. 820. 821. 822. 823. 824. 825. 826. 827. 828. 829. 830. 831. 832. 833. 834. 835. 836. 837. 838. 839. 840. 841. 842. 843. 844. 845. 846. 847. 848. 849. 850. 851. 852. 853. 854. 855. 856. 857. 858. 859. 860. 861. 862. 863. 864. 865. 866. 867. 868. 869. 870. 871. 872. 873. 874. 875. 876. 877. 878. 879. 880. 881. 882. 883. 884. 885. 886. 887. 888. 889. 890. 891. 892. 893. 894. 895. 896. 897. 898. 899. 900. 901. 902. 903. 904. 905. 906. 907. 908. 909. 910. 911. 912. 913. 914. 915. 916. 917. 918. 919. 920. 921. 922. 923. 924. 925. 926. 927. 928. 929. 930. 931. 932. 933. 934. 935. 936. 937. 938. 939. 940. 941. 942. 943. 944. 945. 946. 947. 948. 949. 950. 951. 952. 953. 954. 955. 956. 957. 958. 959. 960. 961. 962. 963. 964. 965. 966. 967. 968. 969. 970. 971. 972. 973. 974. 975. 976. 977. 978. 979. 980. 981. 982. 983. 984. 985. 986. 987. 988. 989. 990. 991. 992. 993. 994. 995. 996. 997. 998. 999. 1000.

# Of the batte of the

certaine standyng waters and marishes. By meanes whereof, the Gothes laye well nys full thre yeres at the siege thereof and could not wyne it. But yet in the meane season, thei won all the towneis nerte aboute, lauyng Ceſena, the which also was kept with a stronge garrison of Odoacers.

Composition,  
betwene Odo  
acer and  
Theodorich,

At the last as well the Assaylaunts as the Defendauntes beinge iurged, the matter was decided by composition, that Theodorich and Odoacer should be Comperes and Fellowes in Emperre. After that thynges were thus set at a stape, Theodorich and his Gothes entered into Raucenna, neyther was there any parte of all Italy that was not content to receyue hym. But this copertnerthyppe in the Emperre lasted not longe. For when as the one bare grudge in his heart pretelye agaynst the other, Theodorich preuentynge Odoacer badde hym to a Banquet and there kelled hym, and so with his Gothes bare all the Emperre alone.

The death of  
Odoacer.

3111733

.m.R

alone

# Gothes in Italy. 4.

alone in Italy. Howe be it, to save the  
trueth, hys gouvernement was not be-  
come intollerable, albeit he reseynded for  
hys people & thyrde part of the lands  
in suche sort as Odoacer had lately be-  
fore deuoyded them. For he suffered  
the cities to bee gouerned by their own  
lawes and by theyr owne citizing.

The raygne  
and actes of  
Theodorich.

Appoynting Rauenna to bee the Sea  
of hys kyngdome, where he also plan-  
ted hym selfe. Thyrtye and seven  
yeres raygned Theodorich in Italye:  
nether late he styll dwelle lyke a co-  
warde all the whyle. For he bothe an-  
nixed Sicill wyth all the Ileslandes a-  
bout it unto hys kyngdome, and also  
subdued Dalmatia. Moreover, du-  
ring the sayde tyme of hys raygne, he  
led an huge hoste ouer the Alpes and  
the ryuer Rhone into Fraunce a-  
gainste the Frenche men.

Thus dyd thys kyng many noble  
actes, and hys name was famous  
and renowned, sauinge that in  
hys latter dayes, he was noted of  
A.ug. cruelty

Symmachus.  
Boetius.

Of the warre of the  
crueltie and outrage, for putting to  
death of Symmachus and Boetius  
Senatours of the citie of Rome, with  
certain other noble men, onely upon  
suspition that they sought to set the ci-  
tie at libertie.

The .iiij. Chapter.

Amulsiuentha the daughter of The-  
odorich with her sonne Athalaricke  
succeede in the kingdome, the severi-  
tie of the Quene in executing of ius-  
tice, the wilfulnesse of the Gothes  
in the education of the kyng, the  
vntimely death of the said Athalarick  
the great frendship of the Quene to-  
ward Theodatus, & the ingratitude  
of him towards her agayn, the empe-  
rour Iustianus sendeth Belisarius a-  
gainst the Gothes, and he conque-  
reth all Sicill.

Theodorich being deceased with-  
out issue male, his daughter  
Amulsiuentha, as then a widow,  
with her sonne Athalaricke suc-  
ceeded in the kingdome. This Athala-  
ricke

# Gothes in Italy. 5.

ricke was but a childe to speake of, and  
therefoze all the whole care of the go-  
uernment lay in the Quænes necke.  
Who hauing great regard of her in-  
fant, immediately dyd put hym forth to  
be broughte vp in learnynge and good  
nurture. For she gaue hym learned  
men to be his teachers, and appoynted  
certaine Lordes of the Gothes, men  
auncient, of great grauitie and good  
bringynge vp to be continually aboute  
hym. And she her selfe looked verie  
straightlye to the gouernement of the  
Empyre, prohibiting the Gothes as  
well to do wronge as to take wronge,  
and also repealynge diuers actes of her  
father Theodorich, reducyng them to  
a moore gentlenesse and clemencie.

An example  
of the good  
education of  
a Prince.

Iustice and  
clemencie in  
a woman.

Amongest the whiche this was one,  
that she restored to the sonnes of Boe-  
thias and Symmachus their fathers  
goods and inheritance, which Theo-  
dorich had lately before confiscate: affir-  
ming that they were wrongfully con-  
demned thynge false accusations,



## Of the death of the

whereunto the kynge manifestly had ge-  
uen lyght credit. Furthermore, she  
Justice with. compelled her cosyn germaine, Ebro-  
out parcialtie datus (who hauyng great possessions  
beinge so in Whislane had taken many fermes  
to notisab and maners violently from hys neigh-  
bouris lyke a tyrant) to make resti-  
tution of the harmes he had done,  
with a sharpe rebuke for hys great  
misbehauour. This severitye of the  
Queene, made many of the Gathes to  
become her enemyes. And therefore,  
certayne of the chiefest of them conspiring  
together, determined to bring by her  
sonne contrary to her disposition, man-  
gre her power. Whereupon they came  
bnto her saying, it lyked not the Co-  
thes that their kynge shoulde lyue in  
subiection vnder tutors and teachers,  
or that he should be kept in awe of his  
eldest. they sayd it was meete for a  
Kynge of such pusaunce as he shoulde be  
to set hys mynde vppon cheualrye and  
feates of armes, and to exercise hym-  
self among lusty yong gentlemen, ra-  
ther

# Gothes in Italy. 6.

ther than to learne to wayte vppon a  
maister, or to sit glumming amonge a  
fozt of old Dotards. For by this mea-  
nes both the body & the mynde of their  
kyng shoulde bee effeminated: But  
throughe that he should encrease as  
well in strength and courage, as also  
in conning and experience. For he was  
not made kyng to thentent to instruct  
his people in learning, but to enlarge  
his dominion by knighthod & cheualry.  
The Queene albeif she were not igno-  
rant to what end & purpose al this dytt  
was brigen, yet not withstanding he-  
cause she would not seme to be utterly  
against their requests, she cōdescended  
vnto the. The yong prync being deli-  
uered to the chpany of as pouthfull as  
himself, wthin a litle while after, fell to a  
more lasciuious trade of liuing solowig  
altogether wth loss of y flesh & such other  
kinds of filthy pleasures. And against  
his mother he became so stoberne & self  
willed through thentement of ill coun-  
sell that he disdained to go vnto her or  
speake to her.

The

balance liue  
no more ad  
no balance to

to the end of  
the world

Licentious li-  
berty corrup-  
tion of youth

is the best  
way to the

## Of the warre of the

**The** Queene when she saw her self by  
still counsell such policies assaulted of her aduer:  
she confusion sary and bereft of her kyngdome, be:  
of counsellers ing a woman of a stout courage, could  
no longer beare with their doynges,  
but sent certaine of her officers priue:  
ly, and put to death thre of the chiefest  
of the Gothes, whiche were the kyngs  
leaders and counsaylers of her sonne  
vnto all noughtinesse. And so hauing  
reconciled hym vnto her, she tooke vp  
pon her the gouernement again. But  
Athalaricke beyng fallen into diuers  
The death of furfetts and diseases through the dis:  
Athalaricke. order of hys former lasciuious luyng,  
deceased in the .xviij. yere of hys age,  
when he had reigned with his mother  
yeres after the death of Theodorich.  
The Queene after the decease of her  
sone, thinking that she shuld be the bet  
ter able to waite throughe the weigh  
tye affayres of the realme, & so be she  
had some partaker & assistant, tooke her  
cousin Theodatus (of whome I made  
Theodotus is mention before) to be her partner in  
made kyng. the

the kyngdome. This Theodatus was excellently well learned both in Latyne and in Greke, and had geuen himself much to the reacyng of Plato and other philosophie. Neuerthelesse, beyng of nature feeble and vnconstant he was distayned wyth many vices.

Through whych where as the queene of her merc bountie & good wyll, had raysed hym from a subiect to the state of a kyng, he soorthwyth requited her with the greatest ingratitude and treacherie that could be. For he conspired secretly with her enemyes, and tooke and sent her as a banished persone, into the Ilelande in the lake of Mulsin. And ere it was long after, he suffered her to be kylled by the kynnsfolke and chyldzen of them, whome she had put to death in the tyme of the obstinate rebellion of her sonne agaynst her. This so great vntrecth and treacherie of Theodatus, dyd greatly disquiet many of the Gothes, lamenting the vnwoorthy mischaunce of the Queene, &

An example of  
excedyng in-  
gratitude.

## Of the warre of the

to see the posteritie of Theodorich so wickedly destroyed, in so much that it wanted but litle, but that the Gothes had made insurrection against him.

The cause of  
the warres be-  
twene the  
Emperour &  
the Gothes.

Whereof as soone as the Emperour Iustinian had intelligence (for after Zeno, Anastasius, & Iustine, the Em-  
pyre descended vnto him) thinking that the tyme now serued to set Italy at li-  
bertie, he applied all his whole mynde  
and study how to compasse and bring  
the same to effect. Wherevnto his prospe-  
rous successe since he was Emperour  
prouoked him: in as much as lately be-  
sege by his captain Belisarius, he had  
vanquished the Vandales and wrested  
Affrick out of their hands. And there-  
fore he thought it was not to be abid-  
den, that (contrary to the honour of the  
Romain Empyre) Italy shuld be held  
in subiection by the barbarous. Indu-  
ced with these reasons, he sent Ambas-  
sadors to Theodatus, requiring him  
to surrender vnto Italy & Sicill, in retri-  
bution whereof he profered him other  
dignities

The effect of  
the Emperours  
ambassade vnto  
Theodatus

dignities & promotions: the which offer  
 yf he refused, then he denounced open  
 war against him. Upon the refusal of  
 these offers made by Theodatus, the  
 Emperour entendig to make no fur-  
 ther delay, commaunded Belisarius to  
 passe into Italy with his army. Howe-  
 beit whiles he was making preparatiō  
 he pretended as though he would have  
 sent his navy into Affricke, & not into  
 Sicill. About the same time also he co-  
 mmaunded another of his captaines cal-  
 led Mundus to invade Dalmatia with  
 another power: to the extent that the  
 Gothes beyng assayled on all sides at  
 once, might the easier be oppressed.  
 Mundus entering into Dalmatia won  
 Salons & set al the countrey on an up-  
 rore. Belisarius having rigged hys  
 shippes & embarked hys souldiours,  
 sayled toward Sicill. He had of foote-  
 men a sufficient number, all tall men  
 and pyked souldiours, and his horse-  
 men were conveyed wth him by wa-  
 ter also.

Belisarius is  
 appoynted in  
 to Italy and  
 Mundus into  
 Dalmatia.

supplod Ar  
 anged

balles w<sup>th</sup> a  
 Belisarius w<sup>th</sup>  
 age into Sicill  
 and of his do-  
 ing there.

Captaines

## Of the warre of the

Captaines of his footemen were Constantine, Vellus, and Herodian: captaines of his horsemen were Valentin, Innocent and Magnus: and lieutenant generall and soueraigne of them all was Belisarius. Who following the commaundment of the emperor hys maister whereas he pretended to sayle towarde Carthage, arriued by the way in Sicill, and there goyng a land as it had bene to refreshe hym selfe and hys souldyours, when he espyed tyme and occasion for hys purpose, sodenlyc he assailed the citie Catina and wonne it. Then following hym self with hys army abroad, and disclosing hys prepenesed purpose, within few dayes after, he receyued Syracuse by composition. After this it is a wonder to see how victorie ranne on hys syde, and how the Cities of theyr owne accord yelded and called him to them. The cause herof was the hatred that the Sicillians bare to the Gothes, and the authoritie of the Emperre.

A politique  
Captaine.

A New called  
Saragoza.



## Gothes in Italy. 9

Emperre of Rome, together with the  
 presence of Belisarius. At home (for  
 as much as he had deliuered Affricke  
 from the Vandaliens) they hoped  
 should be the like by the Gothes tho-  
 rough Sicill & Italy. Moreover, the Go-  
 thes had made no preparation in Sicill,  
 because they looked not for any warre  
 there. By meanes whereof it came to  
 passe, that as many of the Gothes as  
 were in Sicill, beyng amazed at the for-  
 daim invasion of Belisarius, and the  
 hally reuoltyng of the cities, thought  
 more of running awaye than of ma-  
 king resistance. Only the cite of Pa-  
 norinus (by reason there was a strong  
 garrison of the Gothes in it) abode the  
 siege, and endured it to the uttermost.  
 The which cite beyng very defensible  
 and well fortified toward the land, and  
 therupon setting light by any thing  
 that thence could worke agaynst it,  
 at the last by a mace sent into the ha-  
 uen was burned by the sea. For the ha-  
 uen extended hard to the walles of the

cit. being ad P  
 -led to also  
 April

\* Now called  
 Palermo.

The siege of  
 Panormus &  
 the wyanyng  
 thereof.

Of the water of the

to winde: And Belisarius had marked  
howe that in diuers places, the toppes  
of the walles reached a great height abo-  
ue the walles of the citie. And here-  
fore he set Archers and Slingers in the  
topcastles of the toppes, who with ar-  
rowes and darts did so beat their ene-  
mies vnderneath them on all sides,  
that the walles were left naked with-  
out defendants: so that they compa-  
nye went without daunger to the foot  
of the wall, and broke it downe. Who  
rough to this violence they enemies  
beinge discomforted, yelied vp the  
citie. This was the last Citie of all  
Syria that came in subiection. And then  
Belisarius had recovered Ierusalem  
he returned to Constance, and there  
makinge sumptuous and royall page-  
ants, shewed Golde and Silver a-  
monge the people: For it was the last  
daye of his Consulshippe the whiche  
was geuen him in honour of the vic-  
torye that he gate of the Vandalians.  
And Fortune was so fauourable vnto

## Gothes in Italy.

10

to hym, that bespore all his former  
victories, euen the verpe laste daye of  
his Consciloyppes the closed by with  
the reconerpe of all Itall. Thus went  
the world in Itall.

### The. iiii. Chapter.

Of the doynges of Mundus in Dal-  
matia agaynst the Gothes, of the  
death of the sayde Mundus and  
his sonne Maurice, and howe  
one Gnippa a noble man of the  
Gothes recouereth all that Mun-  
dus had conquered before.

**I**n Dalmatia both partes rayled  
greate powres and made to-  
wardes the Citie of Salons.  
Nowe when they were comme neare  
unto the towne, and that the warre was  
labore on bothe partes, at length there  
was a battell fought, not prepurposed  
but by chaunce upon the sodaine with-  
out knowledge before of any of both  
partes. The cause thereof was this.

15.4.

The



The doynges  
of Mundus in  
Dalmatia,

## Of the warre of the

The capitaine Gundus had a sonne called Maurice a goodly yong gentleman and a tall man of his handes. Who hauing the leading of a troope of horsemen, rode to view the Campe of the Gothes. Now by chaunce the Gothish horsemen met with him, and as soone as the one parte had espied the other, there was no tarlence but straight to the skirmishe. So thei encountred for a tyme very fiercely, and many of the stoutest of the Gothes were slaine, and at the last Maurice also was killed.

Both the Campes hearyng of the skirmishe, made speede to rescow their companies. Whyles that Gundus was on his way, tidings was brought him of the losse of his sonne. Then the man beyng of nature fierce & warlike, ran in a rage lyke a mad man oppon his enemies. By that time was at the hoste of the Gothes come thither, and the encounter was with the whole power of ether part, the battell was very bloody and cruell. At length the Gothes being

Sodaine battell  
betwene  
the Gothes &  
the Imperials.  
as subaunt to

capitane

being discomfited both great slaughter  
 and losse of their people were put  
 to flight. But Othobus whyles he dis-  
 sacriably followed the slaughter of the  
 Gothes, and for anger and sorrow of  
 the losse of his sonne pursued the chase  
 to farre, was requintered of his disper-  
 sed enemies and slain and so the father  
 through the outrageous reuengement  
 of his sonne, in the end did seeke his own  
 confusion. After this battell both ar-  
 mies departed a sundre. For the Go-  
 thes being vanquished durst not abide  
 in those quarters, and the Emperours  
 souldiours being dismayed with the  
 losse of theyr Captain, left halons and  
 retpyed backe agayne. I thinke it not  
 good to suppress both titles a thing that  
 many authours haue made mencion of.  
 They say there were certayne old ver-  
 ses of Sybill in the which it was pro-  
 phesied, that when Africke should be  
 recovered by the Romans, then should  
 Othobus (which word as it is here a  
 mans name; so also it signifieth the  
 world)

Se the end of  
 outrageous  
 furye.

edidit  
 illa tunc  
 etiam  
 etiam

A prophesie  
 of Sybill.

# Of the Battle of the

world) and by what should peryshe.  
This prophesie of Sibill made many  
men affrayed, doubting least heauen  
and earthe with all mankynd should  
utterly haue decayed; But after the  
time that Africk in the former warres  
was recovered by the puissance of Ce-  
lisarius, then it appeared howe that  
Sibill prophesied of the destruction of  
this Captaine and his sonne. So depe-  
ly are all prophesies wrapped in dout-  
full circumstances. After the death of  
this Captaine and the departure of his  
army, the Gothes beganne to growe  
the stronger in those parts. For Gri-  
pion of the noble men of the Gothes,  
immediatly therupon raising a new po-  
wer recovered Balons & all that ener  
Goths had gotten before in those places.  
In so much that the Gothes were farre  
of greater power then their enemies in  
those borders. And therewithall Theo-  
datus the king taking stoutly vpon him  
thought himself able to match or rath-  
er to overcome the moreouer in battell.

The Gothes  
reconer all  
that Mundus  
had conquered

The

... of the ... Chapter 4 ...

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

¶ The Emperour sendeth a new Lieu-

tenance into Dalmatia, named  
Constantine, who was a

Constantinople, who recovereth all  
Dalmatia and Lybia.

But this one thing and is not possible

When Justinian heard of the

things that were done in Idaho.

matia, he made one of his Court

tyers named Constantine A. lieutenant

of the warres there: And therewith

all spoke to Believing that he should

without further delay pass into

Italy. Constantinian therefore became

young. Communist infiltration during  
recovered his arm and the machine

furnished her name of all things.

after that he began to turn a table

about the powers thereof at home.

ch/ñ remove from the parent

...faded to yellowish. The flowers are

...to ... ..  
... ..

## Swagmuthen Tettapne: 1 Bowditch

...there by Orppla, who being y name  
of a Christianus...  
...the name of a Christianus...

6. Colaniniani paying along the shore  
One beautiful to behold at the 2nd

NOT, BECAUSE OF THE BEHOLDER'S EYE FOR THE

Constantian  
made lieute-  
nant of Dal-  
maria.



## Of the building of the

building and number of the shippes,  
by and by retourned unto Grippa, and  
where as þ thing was great of it self,  
they reported it to be far greater then  
it was in dede. At the which tidinges  
Grippa was at his witts end and wist  
not in the worlde what to do. For he  
thought it both perillous and also great  
folly to encounter against so great a  
power: and to enclose him self within  
Salons he durst not, because he had  
the Cittie more then half in a gelousie  
of treason, & the walles of the towne  
were in diuers places decayed & fallen  
downe for lacke of reparation. Where  
ouer, considering that his enemies  
were to strong for him on þ sea, he was  
afraid he should soone be brought to  
scarcetie of victualls. Being distressed  
with these cares, at length (which is  
the refuge in such extremities) he fell  
to counsell. According to the same he  
conueighed all his hoost a good waye  
out of Salons, and encamped in a  
place conuenient. In the meane tyme

The sodaine  
feare of Grip-  
pa at the arri-  
uall of Con-  
stantian.

Counsell the  
refuge of cares

Con.

13,  
Constantian arrived with all his fleet  
at Lynce, there having intelligence  
what was done, he sailed to the next  
shore, and there setting his men a land  
sent **CCCC** of them before, to take  
the straight & narrow passages in the  
night season, which are within a litle  
town of Salons. The which thing be-  
ing executed, he him self the next mor-  
ning brought all his army to the citie,  
and without any trouble recovered  
the same. When Crippa had under-  
standing thereof, he taried not past two  
or three dayes there, but that he deter-  
mined to depart thence, and so he re-  
coured to Ravenna by water, lea-  
ving up utterly to the enemye bothe  
Dalmatia & Lyburnie, the which im-  
mediately without any resistance came  
into the hands of Constantian.

Constantian  
getteth Dal-  
matia and  
Lyburnia.

Dalmatia, Ly-  
burnia, & Illy-  
ricū, are nowe  
called all by  
one name of  
Sclauony.

**The .vj. Chapter.**

Belisarius arriveth in Italy, and after long  
siege wythyn Naples.

**B. b.**

**Belisa.**

The arrivall  
of Belisarius  
in Italy,

**B**elisarius upon the receipt of the  
Emperours letters, when he should  
passe into Italy, leaving garrisons  
of souldiours at Syracuse and Pa-  
mus, went with the residue of his ar-  
mie to Messina: and there landed  
vnto Regium. From thence he led his  
armie by lande through the Bruttians  
and Lucanes, commanding his na-  
vie to coast him by the shore of the nei-  
ther sea as nere the land as might be.  
As he went forward, the inhabitants  
of those countreys revolted to him thick  
and threfold. When he had after this  
sozt certaine dayes continued his jour-  
ney, at length he stayed about Naples,  
the which citie was kept with a great  
and strong garrison of the Gothes.  
Where he commaunded his shippes to  
lye at anchour in the haven, but yet  
wout the shot of artillery, & he himsele  
in the meane tyme bringing his army  
nere vnto the towne, viewed the situ-  
ation of the citie & the nature of the place  
vpon the land. It was not long after  
but

Belisarius cometh to Naples.

but that he take by composition a strong  
bulwarke standing in the suburbs.  
Thereupon as he was about to plant  
his siege, the Neapolitans sent their  
Ambassadors unto him, among whom  
was one Iohann a man of much wis-  
dome and authority in the citie.  
He spake these wordes in effect: that  
Belisarius dyd not well to make war  
vpon the Neapolitans, whiche ne-  
uer had done hym any wrong in all  
his lyfe. They inhabited a citie kept  
by the garrisons of Theodatus and the  
Gothes, by means whereof he could  
not hope for any thing at their hands  
being under the iurisdiction and sub-  
jection of other men. But yf so be it  
he myght be so bolde to say his mynde,  
he dyd vnadvisedlye to longer there in  
bayne. For hadde he once gotten  
Rome, he shoulde straight wayes  
obteyne Naples. But yf he were  
sette besyde Rome, he were not able  
to keepe Naples though he had it.

The words of  
the Neapoli-  
tan ambassa-  
dour to Belis.

14

## Of the Warres of the

The answer  
of Belisarius  
to the Ambassa-  
dour.

Wherefore it had bene matter for him  
to haue gone forth of all to Rome a-  
gainst the Gothes that were there, and  
not to haue stayed at Naples, the whi-  
ch should fall as an overplus to the lot  
of the Conquerour which way so euer  
the world went. Belisarius replied  
thereto, that whether he did adu-  
sedly or vniadvisedly in tarrying aboute  
Naples, was no part of their charge to  
determine, for he asked not their coun-  
sell therein but rather to take thought  
for those things that pertained to them  
selues, namely whether it were better  
for them to procure their owne saufe-  
gards and libertie by receyuinge the  
Emperours armye, or by continuing  
in bondage vnder the barbarous Go-  
thes woorthely to be besieged and bitter-  
ly destroyed. For he was fully purpo-  
sed not to depart thence untill he had  
the citie at his pleasure, his desire was  
to obteyne the towne rather withoute  
their destruction then to it. This was  
his saying openly. And secretly he per-  
suaded

# Gothes in Italy. 15.

suaded Stephen to exhort his Citizens  
 rather to seek the impetuous good will & Good counsel  
 favour, then his indignation & displea- if it had bene  
 sure. Who atours at their retourne in- taken.  
 to the citie, reported the words of Be-  
 lisarius. And when they came to consul-  
 tation as concerning the same, Ste-  
 phen being demaunded his opinion in  
 the case, saide he thought it to daunge-  
 rous a matter for the Neapolitanes,  
 to tourne the hant of so great a warre  
 vpon themselves, and therefore he  
 wished them by some composition or  
 other, to prouide for their sauegarde.  
 This counsell was furthered also by  
 one Antiochus a Syrian borne, who  
 had continued longe tyme at Naples  
 as in the waie of traffique & marchan-  
 dise, a man of great wealth & of much  
 credit among the Neapolitanes, he by  
 perswading the like that Stephen had  
 done, had moued many to be of his  
 opinion: the people also & the counings  
 of the citie were desirous of the same.  
 In so much that thentes were openly  
 heard

# Of the waite of the

heard crying out to haue the gates set open and Belisarius let in. There were about egypte hundred Gothes in garrison, who albeit that it greeued them to see these things, neuertheless so: as muche as they durste not withstand the wyl of the people, gathered themselves together. Pado, and Asclepiodorus citizens of Naples being friends of the Gothes, and therefore sorry to see the present estate of the citie altered, when they sawe howe the people were bent, durste not openly gainsay they: belyes, but wrought by an ouerthwart meanes to breake thagreement. And therupon allowing and praying openly all that was determined in the assembly, as though it had looked them verie well, they counselled to knitte by the matter stronge ly with many bandes and covenants, requirynge an othe so: pertyninge of the same. The articles that they had devised were such as they thought Belisarius woulde not haue consented vnto,

Belisarius heard  
that had still  
made

The crafty  
dealing of  
Asclepiodorus  
and Pastor.

Fayre wordes  
make fooles  
fayne & wyse  
men to some  
tyngs.

to,



to, in speciall ye srynge he shoulde be  
 chosen to the perfonnanice of them.  
 Wherfore in as much as they seemed  
 to speake these thynges of good will  
 to the people, they obteyned to haue  
 the decree made accordyng to theyr  
 owne deuise. And thereupon all  
 thynges were penned and saye mo-  
 des engraue. Stephan was sent with  
 the Booke from the Citie to Belisa-  
 rius. Who after he hadde perused the  
 same agreed to euery article, and offe-  
 red to be fforwarde to the keeping of the.  
 Stephan returned and brought the booke  
 thereof into the citie. Wherby the peo-  
 ple greatly reioysing began to runne  
 to the gates, sayinge that Belisarius  
 shoulde be set in. Pastor and Asclepi-  
 odorus heyring this. And when they perceyued  
 that these thynge shoulde take no place, cal-  
 led together the Gothes and citizens of  
 Naples such as were of their owne fac-  
 tion. Declaring vnto them that it was a  
 folly to lose the towne at the pleasure  
 of the unkyllfull multitude.

The malice of  
 Pastor and As-  
 clepiodorus  
 brusteth out.

## Of the warre of the

For what man had so lytle witte, that could not vnderstand, that if Belshazzar were in any hope at all of winning the citie, he would neuer have consented to tharticles that were sent vnto him. But now because he was out of all hope, he had granted to those things which he would not stand to, to consent to make them traitours at theyr bittermoste peryll. For if he bare them so much good will as he pretended, he would not haue there taried to surprise the by subtiltie, but would haue kept on his way to trye the matter by battell against Alboadatus and his Gothes.

By alleggynge these and suche other thyngs, they both perswaded the Citizens to make resistance, and also encouraged the Gothes to stand to the defence of the Citie. Besides this they armed the Jewes, of the which there was a great multitude in Payles, & caused them to take their parte. By means whereof the rest of the citizens were put in feare, and all the communication

and

and conuents with Belisarius were broken. Belisarius therefore after that time addrested himselfe to the siege. Ofteyntimes when he attempted to winne it by assault, he was put to the repulse with great losse and perill of his souldiours. For the walles of Naples are partly environed with the sea, and partly do stand vpon high and steepe places, so that it is a very harde matter to scale them. The conduits by which water ranne into the citie, albeit they were all broken by Belisarius: yet not withstanding it seemed to be no great discommoditie to them that were besieged, because they had many wells in the towne, so that they could want no water. But most of all hurted them the hope of helpe to come, for as much as they had sent their Ambassadors to Rome for ayde against their enemies. And as Belisarius was in a more parte hope, and thought to haue broken by his siege, Fortune wonderfully opened the way

## Of the warre of the

of compassed vnto him. There was a wa-  
ter chanel cut deepe into the ground by  
which water was wont to be conueyed  
into the citie. This at the beginning of  
the siege had Belisarius broken (as he  
had done other before). A certain soul-  
dier of Chandiocle by chaunce ente-  
ring into the same; went in it hard to  
the walles of the citie. There was at  
the place where it went vnder the wall  
a stone not layed by mannes hand but  
of nature; through the which there  
was a hole boren to let the water into  
the citie. But the hole was not so wyde  
that a man might enter in at it. The  
which when the souldier had well be-  
liued he perceiued that if the hole in  
the stone were made larger; they  
might haue passage into the Citie.  
And thereupon he made Belisarius  
knowe to all that he hadde seene. The  
Captaine greatly reioysing thereat,  
and promisinge great rewardes, bade  
the souldier choosē some of his fello-  
wes to helpe hym; and to open the  
stone

Good fortune  
of Belisarius.

stone more, not by diggyng and hea-  
wyng least the people of the streyng  
should be wryng them, but by syling and  
scrapping and that very softly. Woke as  
the Captayne commaunded so the  
souldyer dyd. To be short, through the  
continual and diligent paynestakynge  
of the souldyer it was brought to that  
poynt, that a man in harness with  
hys sworde and hys target in his hand  
might easily go through. When the  
matter stood in this case, Belisarius  
perceyvinge he shoulde bee may-  
ster of the Citie when he left hymselfe,  
and lothe that hys souldyers shoulde  
sacke it, called out Stephan unto him  
again, and putte hym in remem-  
brance of the miserable chaunces  
that are wonte to happen unto Cities  
that are taken perforce, as the slaugh-  
ter of men, the ravyng of women  
at every Whorettes pleasure, the bur-  
ning of houses, the sackynge and ro-  
ving of all places, and all other byndes  
of mischyses.

the clementie  
and mercy of  
Belisarius.

## Of the warre of the

Wherfore he tolled the Presopolitans to haue respect vnto them selues, and not to abyde the bittermost at their peryll, for as yet they had tyme to repent them of their folly, Stephan hearynge these thinges, at his retourn declared the same to his cithens with sighes and teares. But they despising his wordes had hym in derision for his labour.

The meane  
whereby Be-  
lisarius won  
Naples.

Belisarius therefore executynge hys prepened purpose, when he had fully determined to take the cite, provided for the same in this maner. As soone as euer it beganne to be darke, he chose out foure hundred souldiours, commaundynge every one of them to put on hys harnesse and to take his swordes and hys target in his hande, and being so armed in a readinesse, to kepe themselves close without noyse, vntill they had knowledge what they shoulde doe. He appoynted leaders of them Spagnus and Cynas stout men, in whose puissance he dyd putte muche confidence. When it was now past mydnight,

night, he disclosed the matter to the  
 leaders, and shewing them the place  
 commaundeth them to lead the sol-  
 diers through the channell by torches  
 light. And as soone as they were got-  
 ten into the citie, he taught them what  
 they should doe, wplyng them to take  
 some part of the walles, and to geue to-  
 ken thereof by the sound of a trumpet.  
 He him selfe had prepared befoze hand  
 a great sort of ladders to scale the wals  
 with, commaunding all his armye to  
 be ready in their harness, wherof he had  
 the mynblest and best practised aboute  
 his owne persone. Whyles he was  
 thus aboute his matters, many of the  
 souldiers that were with Magnus re-  
 tyed backe for feare of the daunger,  
 and could not be made to go forwarde,  
 neyther by sayre meanes nor by soule.  
 Whome Belisarius sent away wpyth  
 great rebuke, supplying their roomes  
 with two hundred of them that he had  
 about him. Uppon the which reproche  
 men they that befoze refused to go, so-

Shame fur-  
 mounteth  
 dread of daun-  
 ger.

(1110)

C.ij. loved.



# Of the death of the

loved. The soldiers went a long and  
a blinde way in the chancell. For it en-  
ded not at the wall, but led further in-  
to the citie, being vaulted over aloft  
with Wycke. In so much that y soldiers  
wist not where they were, untill  
they espyed the skye at the ende of the  
vault. When they perceyued themsel-  
ues to be in the middes of the citie, one  
of the which place it was a hard mat-  
ter for them to escape, because they had  
ysauoured climbing vp vpon the high  
walles wherew it was enclosed round  
about. Nevertheless at length when  
one had helped by another & all were  
come out, they went to the walles  
there hauing slayne the watchmen  
toke two towres; & from thens gaue  
a signe by sounding a trumpet, and  
making a greate shoute. By and by  
Belisarius made toward the same  
places, and rering by ladders commaun-  
ded his soldiers to scale y towne. In  
thesame place happened much trouble  
& muche tarpens, by reason the ladders  
(being

Naples is ca-  
ten.  
un.

(being made secretly by name) were not able to reach the toppe of the wall. By means whereof they were obliged of necessity, to bynde two ladders one at the end of another, & so to get by. This was done on the north side of the towne, and at the same instant was a sharpe encounter at the other side of the towne that is toward the sea. For in the same place fought a multitude of Yelwes, leud & desperat persons, such as hoped for no favour nor mercy if they were taken. And therefore they stood stoutly at defense, giving no place of entrance to the enemy. Another part of the host had set fire on the East gate, & made hast to breake into the citie. In the meane season the day began to breake, & the soldiers which had scaled by ladders, had broken open a gate to let in tharmy, & there withall thother company rushed in at the East gate which was before set on fire. Then was there running through the citie, and all places were defiled with slaughter and ranspyng.

The desperate fighting of the iewes.

The multitude of the iewes that were slain.

But especially those soldiers play-  
 ed the Wretches, whose brothers or  
 kindred had bene slaine in the former  
 conflicts by the Constantinians aboute  
 the Citie. For they after that the towne  
 was taken, died the victorie very cru-  
 elly, sparing no age young nor old man  
 nor woman. And the Greeks, whiche  
 defended that part of the Towne that  
 is toward the sea, when all the rest of  
 the towne was taken, stode neuer the  
 less stoutly at their defense, neither gave  
 they over before that the soldiers con-  
 uing aboute the Citie, assailed them  
 behinde. When was enterance made on  
 that parte of the Citie also, and euery  
 place was replenished with slaughter  
 and sacking. But Belisarius himself  
 after the taken of Naples, died the vic-  
 torye very gently. For after that weap-  
 ons was once layd out of hand, he suffer-  
 ed not any Citizen to be eyther slayne  
 or taken prisoner, and he restored the  
 women to their husbandes and paren-  
 tes unrauisht and undefiled at all.

Toward

The clemen-  
 tie and gentle  
 vsing of the  
 victorie by  
 Belisarius.

Whereas the Citizens which were  
there in garrison, he shewed no manner  
of cruelty. As for Bassus and Asclepi-  
dotus the Authours and causes of so  
great mischiefs, not Belshazzar, but  
the people of the towne themselves did  
iustice vpon. The next day after  
the taking of the citie, ranne to theyr  
houses and finding Asclepiodotus at  
home killed hym and dextoe hym thro-  
rough the citie. But they coulde not  
finde Bassus. For he even in the very  
tumult of the taking of the citie, either  
wilfully slew him selfe, or else dyed for  
despayre and sorow of mynde. Yet not-  
withstandinge the people bearynge a  
deadly hatred against him, neuer left  
slepyng him, vntill such tyme as they  
saue his dead carcas wth their eyes,  
neither coulde they be satisfied, but  
that they tare his bodie in peeces eu-  
ery member from other. And Belisa-  
rius did beare wth theyr outrageous  
dealyng, for the euill whych they had  
committed, vnto whom such cruelty was  
extended.

Euill counsel  
worst to the  
geuers thereof

2

extended. Samples therefore have to be  
this means both taken and stored.

### 39 The.vij. Chapter.

The Gothes kyll Theodatus and let vp Vir-  
gins to be theyr Kyng, Virgins maketh an  
oration to the Senate and people of  
Rome, and leadeth awaye the chiefe of  
them with him for pledges, he marryeth  
the doughter of Amulius netha and en-  
tereth in league with the Frenche men,  
Belisarius cometh to Rome, whiche is  
yelded to hym by the Citizens, he forti-  
feth and victailth the citie and getteth  
certaine towynes from the Gothes.

**T**he Gothes that dwelte at Rome and other places thereabouts, hearing of these things that were done at Naples, were stricken with great feare and mistrust in them selues. For they beleued undoubtedly that Belisarius would come against them. Wherefore encouraging one another, and calling forth the rest that were men of warre of theyr owne nation, they encamped them selues betwene the cities of Antania & Taracina.

Maracina. Where when the chief men  
of warre of the Gothes were assem-  
bled together, finding great faulte  
with the former misgouernment & pre-  
sent cowardnesse of Theodatus, final-  
ly they made insurrection against him  
in the campe, and set vp Vitigis to be  
their kynge. This Vitigis was not  
borne of the blood royall, but he had al-  
wayes bene knowen for a stout Cap-  
tain & a good man of warre, & through  
his valiaunt behauour he had purcha-  
sed much honour & authoritie. Theoda-  
tus when he hard thereof, stole privately  
away & fled toward Rauenenna with all  
the speede he could make. But the new  
king sending of his gard immediately af-  
ter him, overtooke him by the way & kil-  
led him. After this Vitigis came to Ro-  
me, & there making an oration to the  
Senate & the people, put the in remem-  
brance of the benefites of Theodorich,  
exhorting the not to worke any nouel-  
ties. For he told them that the Gothes  
had a great power in Italye, and that  
those

The election  
of Vitigis  
with the depo-  
sition & death  
of Theodatus

The oration  
of Vitigis to  
the Romans.

## Of the beate of the

those things which had lately hapened  
chadised not through the imbecillitie &  
weakenes of their nation, but because  
that the Gothes could not find in their  
hartes to loue & obey Theodatus. But  
now considering they agreed all in one  
will & vnto all by one lyne, cleane con-  
trary effects must needs followe. And  
therefore no man shoulde be able to at-  
tempt any alteration hereafter in Ita-  
ly, but that he shoulde be met with to  
his cost. Al these things he did discourse  
before Libertus bishop of Rome. And  
for because he was but a newe founde  
kyng, he caused the bishop & the people  
to swere to be trew vnto him. For the  
more assurance wherof, he chose ma-  
nye of the Senators and people of  
Rome, whome he ledde with him as  
pledges, committing the charge of the  
citie to one of his noble men called Lu-  
deris, with whome he left foure thou-  
sande chosen souldyers to keepe Rome  
withall. He hym selfe with the residue  
of his army made towards Nauenna.

When



When he came thither, to the intent  
the moore to establishe his estate, he  
tooke in marriage the daughter of A-  
mulusuentha niece unto the late Theo-  
dorch, whome Theodatus had kept  
in wardie lyke a prisoner. And so by ally-  
ng him self with the blood royall, he  
aduanced the honour and dignitie of  
his crowne. This done, he ceased not  
to muster the Gothes through all his  
realme, and to furnishe them through-  
ly with horse and harnesse, and vigi-  
lantly to prouide for all kinde of mu-  
nitions and artillerie for the warres.

But as Vitigis was aboute to assem-  
ble the Gothes that were about the ri-  
uer Po and the citie Pavia and other  
places in Lubaroy of which there was  
great power and an huge number, a  
stoppe was cast in hys way, namely the  
feare of the French nation. For at that  
tyme they had extended their dominion  
on enen unto the Alpes, and on thys  
side the Alpes the Gothes possessed all.  
These two nations were scarce friends

Vitigis mar-

ch.

the daughter

of the

of the

From origin  
Vitigis enfe-  
reth in league  
wyth the  
Frenchmen.

**O**f the warre of the  
one to another, but rather more then  
halfe enemies through priuie harbou-  
ring among them felues. Further  
more it was well known, that them-  
persour had lately solicited the French  
men to make warre against the Go-  
thes. For the which causes Vitigis sen-  
ding his Ambassadors into Fraunce  
endeuored to rid himself of that feare,  
the which he at length obteyned by en-  
tering in league and frendshippe with  
them. Whyle Vitigis was laying for  
these things before hand, in the meane  
season Belisarius hadynge refreshed  
and furnished his armie, determined  
to go to Rome. Wherewithpon leaving  
Herodian with a garrison at Naples,  
and another garrison lyke wise at Cu-  
me, he with the residue marched to-  
ward Rome. His tomp lay by the way  
that leadeth from Rome into Latium.  
The Romans hearing of Belisarius  
approche, were nothing discontented  
therewith. It chanced so that one Fi-  
delis de Spillatine (who in the tyme of  
Athalericke

Valerianus had bene steward of the  
 kings house) departing frō Rome met  
 with Belisarius, & consulted him to  
 bring his hoste with all speere men to  
 the cite, for he told him that the Romans  
 were not minded to shut their gates a-  
 gainst the emperours army. And in dede  
 by alwayns talke it was to be sene that  
 the people were of the same mind with  
 in the cite. With the which thinges  
 the Gothes being sore dismayed that  
 were left there in garrison, determi-  
 ned fully to go all awaye: saying the  
 Captayn Luderis: who standing upon  
 his reputation, had rather to haue died  
 then to abandon the towne committed to  
 his charge. The Romans gave the Go-  
 thes free passage without interruption.  
 And so it fortuned that at the very same  
 day & houre that the Gothes went out  
 of Rome at the gate of Flaminius, Be-  
 lisarius entred in at the gate Celsimon-  
 tana, otherwhise called Asinaria. After  
 the which Belisarius had ben receiued into the towne  
 with great ioye & gladnes of all estates,  
 which

The Romans  
 become impe-  
 rialles.

he

## Of the house of the

Belisarius for:  
richeth and vic  
tyeth Rome

he made an action before the senate  
and the people, & after many tales great  
diligence in repairing the wall & the  
tifying of the citie. For he was wyllyng  
mended the wall & buylded hal-  
lows in places convenient, but also  
cutt by trenches and rampiers aboute  
them. And moreover contrived the  
ther great flood of graine by water;  
the which he caused to be layd by in  
common granaries. And he remembred al-  
though they were at the willowes  
of their captaine, yet that he was not  
his so exquisite diligence in fortifying  
of the citie. For so wyllyng was he  
he was beinge entered into the  
the emperours armye, he was not to  
thinke of beinge helpe, but of hel-  
ping others. Pointed to say the death  
Belisarius weyinge to his owne by  
some weakness & the great power of  
the Gothes, did already in his mynde  
foresee what was like to come. And yet  
was he not altogether yll of fortune  
season, but by his pitie captaine Con-  
stantine

Constantine and Belian. the same time he  
 recovered Perusa, Spolet, & Verula  
 by compulsion. Also there was a battell  
 fought against the Gothes not farre  
 from the citie of Verula. For this was  
 the medietie between intelligence of the  
 revolting of the Verulans, sent Vindus  
 and Vissa with an army into Etruria  
 to the intent as well to keepe syl  
 in due obedience such as had not revol  
 ted, as also to subdue againe such as  
 had forsaken their allegiance.

Bellianus ga  
 teth three  
 towne from  
 the Gothes.

Now called  
 Perugia.

The viii. Chapter.

A battell is fought at Perula betweene the  
 Gothes and the Imperialles to the losse of  
 the Gothes: Vindus marchyng towards  
 Rome stayeth at the ciuitie Anio, where  
 the next day encountring wyth Belianus  
 he putteth hym to fighte and so proce  
 deth to the siege of Rome wyth two  
 hundred thousand men.

There was at Verula Constantine  
 one of Belianus captaine,  
 and he had assembled thither all

# Of the taking of the

Atwell be  
twene the  
Goths and  
the Imperials

Isidore  
Augustine

his master Constantine a soldier  
died that he kept the in garrison at  
Sparta. So at such time as the  
thirde army approached and was come  
almoste hard to the walles of pebble,  
Constantine with his men in order of  
battel ready to fight, issued out of the  
Cittie and set upon the Gothes. There  
was then counter with much force and  
poissans on bothe sides. The Gothes  
were greatly fortified by their multi-  
tude, and the soldiers of Constantine  
by the advantage of the place, & thallis-  
ters of the Cittie at hand. After longe  
fyrhtinge, the Gothes at length were  
quercome & put to flight, great slaugh-  
ter was made of them and many were  
taken prisoners, amonge whome Vitilas  
and Jovila the Captaynes were taken  
and sent to Rome unto Belisarius.  
Vitigis therefore havinge besides the  
losse of his towne received moreouer  
this slaughter, thoughte it was not to  
make any further delaye, but with all  
the power of the Gothes that he was  
able

able to raise, set forth to the warres.  
 When he remoued from Rauenna to  
 ward Rome, he had in his hoste. CC.  
 fighting men, of which the most part  
 were armed in Almain riuets. With  
 this so huge hoste he marched toward  
 Rome in suche terrible maner, & wyth  
 suche speede, that it was to be doubted  
 least that Belisarius would not haue  
 abydden his coming. And therefore  
 he made not anye staye eyther at Spo-  
 let, Veruse, or Parma, but kept on his  
 waye tyll toward Rome. Belisarius  
 when he perceiued so great a brunt of  
 warres turned vppon his necke, com-  
 manded Constantine and Belas to  
 retire to him out of hand, wyth such  
 power as they had aboute them. Con-  
 stantine obeyed his commaundement  
 and came wyth his armye forthwyth  
 out of Thuscane to Rome. But it was  
 somewhat later ere that Belas did set  
 out of Parma, in so much that he was  
 entangled with the fyerest of  
 the Gothes. For Vitigis way lay hard

Vitigis mar-  
 cheth toward  
 Rome wyth  
 200000. soul-  
 dyers.



22 Of the taking of the  
vnder Parma. Whether as soon as  $\text{h}$   
Curours were come; Belisarius  
out of the city and submitted to them,  
he put many of their troopes to flight  
and slew diuers of the. Nevertheless by  
reason of resorte of more multitude  
come, he was compelled to withdraw  
self again into the citie. From whence  
he made hast to Rome & bare tidings  
that  $\text{h}$  Gothes were at hand & within  
kenning. The Gothes passing by Par  
ma went through the countrie of  $\text{h}$  Sa  
bines into the fields of Rome. When  
they came nere the towne they staid at  
the riuer Anio. For belisarius had forti  
fied the bridge on both sides  $\text{h}$  water w  
bulwarks & enclosures, & had set a gar  
rison of souldiers to kepe it. By meanes  
wherof  $\text{h}$  Gothes at their first coming  
being not able to get ouer, encamped  
theselues beyond the riuer Anio. But  
 $\text{h}$  next night following they were set  
to kepe the bridge, being dismayed at  $\text{h}$   
number & fiercenesse of the barbarous  
people, forsoke the towres & bulwarks  
of

The shamefull  
flight of the  
souldiers of  
Belisarius.

of the bidge, & stealing privately away  
went into Capanie for feare leaſt Be-  
liſarius ſhould puniſhe the for their la-  
bour. Belſarius was minded to haue  
pitched his campe by the river And di-  
rectly againſt y<sup>e</sup> campe of the Gothes,  
to the intent to haue detained them the  
longer in y<sup>e</sup> ſame place. And therefore y<sup>e</sup>  
next day he went thither to a y<sup>e</sup> horſe-  
men to view the country & the Deamea-  
ment of his enemies & alſo to choſe a  
meet ground to encampe in. As he  
was going thither, when he came al-  
moſt at the river contrary to his expec-  
tation he met with the Gothe y<sup>e</sup> horſe  
men. y<sup>e</sup> of the Gothes but euen a litle  
while before, perceling y<sup>e</sup> bulwarke  
of the bidge to be abandoned, had bro-  
ken open the gates and the barriers,  
and had paſſed ouer the Apuc in  
greate number. Whole ſodayne ap-  
proche, vpon Belſarius other wyſe  
then he looked for, conſtrayned hym  
together he would be as to put hym-  
ſelfe to the encounter.

An encounter  
vnloked for.

## Of the name of the

At the beginning, Valerianus executed nothing but the office of a Captaine, encouraging and commanding his souldiers and shewing what euery man should doe. But when he saw his men overclared & like to go by the waste end of the staffe, then was he of necessity compelled to leaue the office of a Captaine, and to playe the stout souldiour. For he was sayne to put himselfe into the forefront of the battell, and there to laye his hands about him shouting and valiantly as other of his souldiers. The which daye surely he was in great danger upon such occasion. He had a goodly horse, upon which he was commonly wont to ryde, of colour bay w<sup>th</sup> a white lyffe from his foreheade downe to the nostrilles, as he fought upon the same horse among the foremost in the battell, certain runnagats knowing him, cried out to strike the Male. (For so doe the Bothes terme a bay horse in their language,) & there was none other noise ouer all the feld but to strike o Male.

By means whereof it came to passe,  
 that all the heart of the latter was turne  
 now upon Belisarius. And undoubtedly Danger the  
 ife full sent hand of his very familiar whetstone of  
 frendes his not clustered aboute him courage.  
 and they notably to him, yea and in  
 their owne bodies and their owne not  
 young, kept of a thousand strokes, with  
 a thousand weapons, both from the  
 horse and from Belisarius himself all  
 so, it had neuer been possible for him  
 to have escaped. But as at þe time he  
 was so actively assisted, both by his  
 sharp sword fighting most expertly  
 coming to, and also by the helpe of his  
 frendes and familiars, who with their  
 noblest charged fast aboute him in  
 this place in arms of Belisarius very  
 frendes were slain, and in speciall por-  
 tending a man of singular actiue  
 to his fighting about Belisarius, after  
 that he had the many many proofes of his  
 minde and power, and that his  
 many of the clothes at the last being very  
 sore wounded fell downe dead. At the

80 Of the taking of the

length such as were about Belisarius  
making pence with their enemies, put  
the to open flight, & pursued them  
to the bridge. But the Countenast  
at the bridge recruited Belisarius  
his men, & easily put them back. The  
horsemen saying & turned again & as-  
sailed the behind, by means whereof they  
were of necessity compelled to throw  
themselves for refuge upon saint gards  
to a higher ground. Where also the con-  
ter of horsemen being renewed, & the  
ber of the enemies still increasing, af-  
ter many had bene slain on both sides  
at length they were forced to fly to  
ward Rome upon the spur. When  
they came towards the gate that is called  
montys called Maurian. The Gothes  
threw Belisarius hard to the gate in  
so much some were stricken from the  
wall. Where was also much a doin  
the same place. For the Romans that  
kept the wall, for fear of their ene-  
mies so nered at hand, durst not open  
the gate. Neither told Belisarius him  
selfe

the Countenast  
to the bridge  
at the bridge

Belisarius is  
compelled to  
fly.

August

III. C

selfe

selfe knowen, and he called aloud on  
 all them, because the sunne was then  
 downe, & he sawe many a one with  
 shorie. It was then when they had cast  
 the murther in vaine before the gate &  
 could worde tell him, that the enemy was  
 hard at their backs. Belshazzar encour-  
 aging his men, gave a new charge up  
 on his enemies, & putting the to flight  
 by his own hand, he was the gate. So when  
 he had dispersed his enemies, he was  
 then perfectly known, & led his soul-  
 diers into the city. The report of this  
 day was very true and variable. For it  
 beganne and ended after the sonne rising,  
 & it ended not until it was darke night.  
 Belshazzar by the judgement of all men  
 was deare the best warrior that day  
 was known his time. And amongst the  
 many, which was then Belshazzar  
 was returned into the City, he com-  
 manded all his own souldiers  
 and watchmen to keep watch  
 the night long, for he was  
 very much troubled for the  
 night.

Belshazzar put-  
 teth the Go-  
 thes to flight.  
 The words  
 of the  
 in the  
 night.

The words  
 of the  
 in the  
 night.

Of the taking of the  
Distribution of the goods to his Cap-  
taines, and the manner of taking  
them, sheweth that if any alwaye were  
given, no man should come out of the  
place where he was surrounded. The  
same night many Alarums were given  
the City of Rome, and diuers of the City folk. For it was  
cried through the City that the enemye  
was broken in at the gate of Janiculum,  
and thereupon women were fearfully  
taken in hand. And the people could not  
be comforted, untill such troupe of messen-  
gers coming from thence, brought  
word that all was quiet and no enemy  
seen, nor heard of them. At the gate of  
Lara was another Alarme, & that not  
without some cause. For the enemyes  
coming to the gate in the night, en-  
led to the Romanes that stood by  
the walls, & there one of them named  
Bachius a man well known in Rome  
whom Titigius had sent thither for the  
same purpose spake vnto them saying  
Holm is it with you in Rome: are  
ye not ashamed of your follie: to com-  
mit

The wordes  
of Bachius to  
the Romanes,



not your selves to the tuition of a few  
 Grekes, the men, murtherers, and platers,  
 of enterlubes. I god for nothing els,  
 despising y<sup>e</sup> power of the Gothes, whi-  
 che even at their very fyrste coming  
 haue put them to flight and besieged  
 them: Surely the Gothes haue not de-  
 serued that ye shoulde worke so greate  
 treason against them. But repent and  
 amend, for this is thonly way for you  
 to escape, yf you wyl open the gate for  
 the Gothes to enter in, not against you  
 but against those Grekes. But if ye be  
 so mad to persist in your folly, take as-  
 suredly for such warre at the Gothes  
 hands as wil be to wote for you to a-  
 lye. It was our kynge Augustus com-  
 maunded to be told unto you. The Ro-  
 manes made none answer at all to  
 his letters. But as sone as it was re-  
 ported that y<sup>e</sup> Gothes were there, there  
 was coming thither from all parts of  
 the cite. The Gothes hauing tarped a  
 little while, returned to their kinges  
 tent which was betwene the cite and  
 the

the  
 some

**O**f the water of the  
the river. And thus passed over 8 night  
night. The next day the Gothes seeing  
no body come forth to give them battle  
in the field, adressed themselves to the  
siege. The order wherof was this,

**The ix. Chapter**

**T**he order of the siege of Rome, the  
politique provision of Belisarius for  
the defence of the same; what ensue  
thereinnes the Gothes made for to assault  
the same and of their goy oge to the  
assault.

**The siege of  
Rome.**

**T**hey pitched theyr tentes in fyre  
places about the cite, led the way  
of Naminus, unto the way that  
leaveth to Breuella. This campe bele-  
ged firs gates of the cite. Afterward  
they embattolled the .vii. campe on the  
further syde of the bypoge Spiritus.  
This last Campe beleiged the gate of  
Anacrus and cutte of the wayes that  
leade ouer the Ryuer Tyber: They  
fortified theyr campes with dykes and  
trenches and turrets of timber. And

as wel on the one side as on the other of  
the Tyber they made hauocks of all y  
came in their waie. Belisarius on the  
contrary part prouided in this wise for  
the defence of the city. The gate called  
Pinciana which was directly againste  
the greater campe of the Gothes, toge  
ther w<sup>th</sup> the hertegate vnto it on y<sup>e</sup> right  
had called Salaria, & whatsoeuer was  
on that part of the walles therabouts,  
Belisarius toke vnto himselfe to kepe.  
The gate towarde Breuette he com  
mitted to Bellas, The gate of Flami  
nius whiche is on the left hande of the  
Pincian gate, he deliuered to Costan  
tin, and at euerye other of the gates he  
set a keper. The Gothes goyng about  
the Citie brake all the Conduites.  
There were of theym in all fourtene  
made of wonderfull worke, by the whi  
ch water was conueyed into the Citie.  
By the breakynge of these, the Ro  
maynes were not so greatlye afflic  
ted w<sup>th</sup> scarcetye of water, as w<sup>th</sup>  
want of comenytles.

The conduits  
about the  
Cite.

## Of the booke of the

A prouision  
for grinding  
of corne.

For the conduit that cometh downe fro  
the topp of Ianiculum, through the  
further side of Liber into the city, run  
ning swiftly downe the steepe hill, byd  
driue many milles. The by the commodi  
dity of grinding was also ministered by  
other of the conduits in diuers places.  
The which being then broke, brought  
great distresse vpon them that were be  
seiged. Against this displeasure Brissa  
rius provided this remedie. Two ligh  
ters with a space betwene the ym for a  
whele to goe in, were fastned together  
with strong rafter of timber, vpon the  
which the milles were set and so driue  
with the swiftnes and violence of the  
streame, and the lighters were stayed  
with Cables streyned hard and made  
fast on both sydes of the Ryuer. These  
lyghters he placed harde by the firste  
lypge that leadeth ouer Liber. After  
thole he set other lyghters on a rowe.  
And least the enemye might hurte the  
lighters by casting downe fyre or other  
dust from alofte, there were theynes  
of

of iron drawn by the brydge to receiue  
all such gree, and men set on both sides  
to take the same & raze it away. Thus  
was good provision made to supply the  
want of milles, for those lighters full  
tyed to greys as much as they would.  
As for the want of water, that dyd the  
tyuer Elber supplye. Belmarins had  
on diuers places of the walles beuised  
many engines to strike and put backe  
the enemy withall. On the other side the  
Portugueses provided great store of artille-  
rie and engines for the winning of the  
Cittie. The engines were these. Firste  
sower battell blammies whiche were  
made after this fashion. Foure postes  
of timber of this hygh equallye distant  
are sette square one againste another.  
These pollers are fastened with eyght  
ouerwayes foure at the toppe & foure  
at the foote, so that it standet, as it were  
a petye square house. The same is co-  
uered aboue with leather to the entent  
that such as are within it should not be  
hurt from the walles. Alost is laide a  
beam

Engines for  
to assault the  
rowne.

The battell  
Rams.

117  
118  
119  
120  
121  
122  
123  
124  
125  
126  
127  
128  
129  
130  
131  
132  
133  
134  
135  
136  
137  
138  
139  
140  
141  
142  
143  
144  
145  
146  
147  
148  
149  
150  
151  
152  
153  
154  
155  
156  
157  
158  
159  
160  
161  
162  
163  
164  
165  
166  
167  
168  
169  
170  
171  
172  
173  
174  
175  
176  
177  
178  
179  
180  
181  
182  
183  
184  
185  
186  
187  
188  
189  
190  
191  
192  
193  
194  
195  
196  
197  
198  
199  
200  
201  
202  
203  
204  
205  
206  
207  
208  
209  
210  
211  
212  
213  
214  
215  
216  
217  
218  
219  
220  
221  
222  
223  
224  
225  
226  
227  
228  
229  
230  
231  
232  
233  
234  
235  
236  
237  
238  
239  
240  
241  
242  
243  
244  
245  
246  
247  
248  
249  
250  
251  
252  
253  
254  
255  
256  
257  
258  
259  
260  
261  
262  
263  
264  
265  
266  
267  
268  
269  
270  
271  
272  
273  
274  
275  
276  
277  
278  
279  
280  
281  
282  
283  
284  
285  
286  
287  
288  
289  
290  
291  
292  
293  
294  
295  
296  
297  
298  
299  
300  
301  
302  
303  
304  
305  
306  
307  
308  
309  
310  
311  
312  
313  
314  
315  
316  
317  
318  
319  
320  
321  
322  
323  
324  
325  
326  
327  
328  
329  
330  
331  
332  
333  
334  
335  
336  
337  
338  
339  
340  
341  
342  
343  
344  
345  
346  
347  
348  
349  
350  
351  
352  
353  
354  
355  
356  
357  
358  
359  
360  
361  
362  
363  
364  
365  
366  
367  
368  
369  
370  
371  
372  
373  
374  
375  
376  
377  
378  
379  
380  
381  
382  
383  
384  
385  
386  
387  
388  
389  
390  
391  
392  
393  
394  
395  
396  
397  
398  
399  
400  
401  
402  
403  
404  
405  
406  
407  
408  
409  
410  
411  
412  
413  
414  
415  
416  
417  
418  
419  
420  
421  
422  
423  
424  
425  
426  
427  
428  
429  
430  
431  
432  
433  
434  
435  
436  
437  
438  
439  
440  
441  
442  
443  
444  
445  
446  
447  
448  
449  
450  
451  
452  
453  
454  
455  
456  
457  
458  
459  
460  
461  
462  
463  
464  
465  
466  
467  
468  
469  
470  
471  
472  
473  
474  
475  
476  
477  
478  
479  
480  
481  
482  
483  
484  
485  
486  
487  
488  
489  
490  
491  
492  
493  
494  
495  
496  
497  
498  
499  
500  
501  
502  
503  
504  
505  
506  
507  
508  
509  
510  
511  
512  
513  
514  
515  
516  
517  
518  
519  
520  
521  
522  
523  
524  
525  
526  
527  
528  
529  
530  
531  
532  
533  
534  
535  
536  
537  
538  
539  
540  
541  
542  
543  
544  
545  
546  
547  
548  
549  
550  
551  
552  
553  
554  
555  
556  
557  
558  
559  
560  
561  
562  
563  
564  
565  
566  
567  
568  
569  
570  
571  
572  
573  
574  
575  
576  
577  
578  
579  
580  
581  
582  
583  
584  
585  
586  
587  
588  
589  
590  
591  
592  
593  
594  
595  
596  
597  
598  
599  
600  
601  
602  
603  
604  
605  
606  
607  
608  
609  
610  
611  
612  
613  
614  
615  
616  
617  
618  
619  
620  
621  
622  
623  
624  
625  
626  
627  
628  
629  
630  
631  
632  
633  
634  
635  
636  
637  
638  
639  
640  
641  
642  
643  
644  
645  
646  
647  
648  
649  
650  
651  
652  
653  
654  
655  
656  
657  
658  
659  
660  
661  
662  
663  
664  
665  
666  
667  
668  
669  
670  
671  
672  
673  
674  
675  
676  
677  
678  
679  
680  
681  
682  
683  
684  
685  
686  
687  
688  
689  
690  
691  
692  
693  
694  
695  
696  
697  
698  
699  
700  
701  
702  
703  
704  
705  
706  
707  
708  
709  
710  
711  
712  
713  
714  
715  
716  
717  
718  
719  
720  
721  
722  
723  
724  
725  
726  
727  
728  
729  
730  
731  
732  
733  
734  
735  
736  
737  
738  
739  
740  
741  
742  
743  
744  
745  
746  
747  
748  
749  
750  
751  
752  
753  
754  
755  
756  
757  
758  
759  
760  
761  
762  
763  
764  
765  
766  
767  
768  
769  
770  
771  
772  
773  
774  
775  
776  
777  
778  
779  
780  
781  
782  
783  
784  
785  
786  
787  
788  
789  
790  
791  
792  
793  
794  
795  
796  
797  
798  
799  
800  
801  
802  
803  
804  
805  
806  
807  
808  
809  
810  
811  
812  
813  
814  
815  
816  
817  
818  
819  
820  
821  
822  
823  
824  
825  
826  
827  
828  
829  
830  
831  
832  
833  
834  
835  
836  
837  
838  
839  
840  
841  
842  
843  
844  
845  
846  
847  
848  
849  
850  
851  
852  
853  
854  
855  
856  
857  
858  
859  
860  
861  
862  
863  
864  
865  
866  
867  
868  
869  
870  
871  
872  
873  
874  
875  
876  
877  
878  
879  
880  
881  
882  
883  
884  
885  
886  
887  
888  
889  
890  
891  
892  
893  
894  
895  
896  
897  
898  
899  
900  
901  
902  
903  
904  
905  
906  
907  
908  
909  
910  
911  
912  
913  
914  
915  
916  
917  
918  
919  
920  
921  
922  
923  
924  
925  
926  
927  
928  
929  
930  
931  
932  
933  
934  
935  
936  
937  
938  
939  
940  
941  
942  
943  
944  
945  
946  
947  
948  
949  
950  
951  
952  
953  
954  
955  
956  
957  
958  
959  
960  
961  
962  
963  
964  
965  
966  
967  
968  
969  
970  
971  
972  
973  
974  
975  
976  
977  
978  
979  
980  
981  
982  
983  
984  
985  
986  
987  
988  
989  
990  
991  
992  
993  
994  
995  
996  
997  
998  
999  
1000

## Of the beames of the

beame ouerthwart at the ende whereof  
 hangeth downe another beame as it  
 were to the middell of 4 pillars fastned  
 w<sup>th</sup> plates of yron, & which hath a great  
 square head of steellike vnto an annillo.  
 The whole engine is driven w<sup>th</sup> 4  
 wheles fastened in the feete of pillars.  
 When it is remoued frō place to place  
 there are not fewer then 1. souldyers  
 within it to drive it forwarde. Who af-  
 ter the time they haue brought it nere  
 vnto the walle, doe with a certayne  
 wyndch wey up the foresaid beame that  
 lyeth ouerthwart, and when it is aloft  
 doe let it fall with all the whole swaye  
 that it hath. When the head of 4 beame  
 being let downe, partlye with violence  
 and partly with weicht falling vpon 4  
 wall, dothe batter and bryake in peeces  
 al that euer it lighteth vpon. Moreover  
 the Gothes made Turretes of Tym-  
 ber of lyke heigh w<sup>th</sup> the walles, the  
 whiche went vpon 4 wheles a  
 pece. Also they prepared a great num-  
 ber of shaling ladders, together with  
 an

The great  
 force of the  
 battell Ram.

an innumerable sort of faggottes of  
 shrubbes and strawe to fill vp the dy-  
 ches. When all thynges were in suf-  
 ficient readinesse, Antigis comman-  
 ded all hys men to be in a ready by the  
 breake of the next daye, whom he de-  
 uided into companies, appoyntynge  
 what he would haue euery man to doe.  
 The Gothes were verie glad of it  
 and wonderfull desirous of that assault,  
 some carryng faggottes, some bearing  
 shakynge Ladders and other some dy-  
 uynge the engines toward the walles.  
 Belisarius stode vpon the banquette  
 before the gate wyth the tallest men  
 that he coulde chose oute in all hys  
 hoste, geuynge all the reste of hys  
 retinewe charge, not to stirre oute  
 of theyr places before he gaue theym  
 warnynge. The Turrettes (whi-  
 ch I tolde you that the Gothes had  
 prepared) were drawen wyth Ox-  
 en and sette before the reste of the o-  
 ther engyns.

The assault of  
 Rome.

The skillful-  
 nesse of the  
 Gothes.



## Of the Battell of the

The which thing whē Belisarius be-  
helde, he laughed at the simplicitie of  
the Gothes, that they should thinke  
naked Men able to draine an engine  
against armed enemies. And therupon  
he commaunded all his men to dis-  
charge their arrowes at them, the whi-  
ch beyng done and thoren forth wyth  
flaine, the engine stood still and coulde  
be remoued no further. Such as caried  
scalinge ladders and faggottes to fill  
vp the pyches, being repulsed with the  
number of weapons commynge from  
the hamure, coulde nether sell the di-  
ches, nor gette vnto the walles; nor  
yet bringe the battell Rammes nere.  
Nevertheless the battell of the Gothes  
abode by it, and castinge their sheldes  
ouer their heades, sometyme wyth  
plaine force came harde to their ene-  
myes, howbeit they were neuer able  
to winne the hamure. When counter  
was with arrowes, dartes, Javelings  
pykes and all other kind of artillerie.

The

# Gothes in Italy.

34

## The. II. Chapter.

The manner of the assault, the description of the rumbe of the Emperour Adrian and the detaching of the same, the repulse of the Gothes, the marriage of the Romanes agaynst Belisarius, whereupon he aduerteth the Emperour of his peril & necessity.

**W**hile these things were in doing at the Pincian & Salaria gates, Rome was assaulted in three other places. For Vitigis setting parte of his armie to kepe Belisarius occupied, went hymselfe with a number of souldiers to the gate that leadeth to prenestie. And at the same instant another compaignie of the Gothes assaulted the gate of Aurelius. Another sorte of them endeuored to burst in at the gate that is on y<sup>e</sup> tope of Janiculum. Thus was Rome assaulted in foure places at ones at the gates Pinciana and Salaria which Belisarius himself kepte, at the gate prenestine where Belas

The continuance of the assault.

gallus pavi  
cassaba to  
celyf

## Of the warre of the

Wood, and at the gates of Aurelius and Janiculum. But the Gothes that assailed Janiculum were easlye put backe. For the place is stepe and vneasslie to come vnto, insomuch that a man could not well get to the wall though there were no bodye to let hym. And therefore must their enterpryse nedes be to none effect, the place being defended by Paule one of Belisarius captaines with a puissant band of souldiers. At the gate of Aurelius was some what more daunger. The waye was vaulted ouer that leadeth to the church of Saynet Peter the apostle. The Gothes hydyng themselves in the sayde Porche, as one as they espyed tyme for their purpose, brake sodaynely oute of their ambushe, and in all haste made toward Adrians Pyle to winne it. And they dyd so muche wyth their Ladders, that at the fyrste brynte they took the vttermoste wall whiche encloseth the Pyle and was four square.

Thys

The assaulting  
of Adrians  
Pyle.

This Pyle was the sepulchre of the  
 Emperour Adrian builded of most  
 excellent and costly workmanship.  
 The Pyle circuit was made twelve  
 square, all of whyte Marble of the  
 Flandre Maros, garnished through  
 oute with most exquisite workes and  
 portraictures. In the myddes of this  
 square resteth vypp as it were a tower  
 of a verie great height, and of such  
 a breadeth that a man were leaue a-  
 ble to throwe a stone directely from  
 the one syde to the other of the tower  
 that was on the toppe. It hath a  
 bypoge leapyng from thence ouer the  
 Tyber into the Cytye. For the Cy-  
 tye endeth at the Ryuer Tyber, and  
 this is on the further syde of the Ry-  
 uer. Yet notwithstanding because  
 it had a bypoge overchynge harde to  
 the walles of the Cytye, and was  
 (as it were) a certayne Colosse of  
 buttwarke, Belisarius prouyded be-  
 fore hand to haue it well manned and  
 armed.

The descrip-  
 tion of Adri-  
 ans tumber.



The descrip-  
 tion of the  
 piece of work

# Of the warre of the

kept with his owne souldiers, committing the charge therof to Constantine. Constantine therefore when as a litle before he sawe his enemies passinge over the River Riber in botes, to assault that part of the Citie which is betwene the field of Mars and the gate of Aurelius, fearing the lownesse of the walles, (for they were not very strong and defensible theraboutes nere unto the River) ranne thither from Adrians pile with a band of souldiers, leaving but a fewe behind him for the defence of the pile. The Gothes hereupon (as we said before) havinge by means of the absence of the Captaine gotten the outer circuit, endeavored also to winne the pile it selfe. The souldiers that were above, to the intent the more to endamage & repulse their enemies, committed an evill acte. Whiche were in the toppes of the pile on every side, upon the battlements great pyraiges of men, horses, and chariottes standing by densified and excellently wroughte.

Some



The defacing  
of an excellent  
piece of work

Some of these the soldiers tumbled  
downe whole vpon the enemies; &  
ther some they brake in pieces to thos  
at the. And so whether it were through  
ther hardness or through the lewdnes of  
the soldiers, within fewe hours were  
destroyed the excellent inventions of  
conningest workmen in all the world;  
whiche cost so many yeres in making;  
and which were the greatest ornament  
tes and the very beautie of the Citie  
Constantine havinge in the meane  
while repulsed the enemy from the ri  
uer, hearing in what desperate the pyle  
was, rescowed it by the bridge, and as  
sailed his enemies from beneath, wher  
with his owne soldiers were greatly  
recomforted and encouraged. By thys  
meanes the Pyle at length was saued,  
and the enemy repulsed. At the gate to  
ward pnenesse also (where Vltigis and  
the Gothes that he brought with him  
gave the assault) was great danger.  
For not farre from the said gate was a  
place called Vinarisi. The same was

Lib. primo  
ad ca. 10  
la. yd. non  
ca. 10

Adrians pyle  
is rescowed.



Rome in dan-  
ger to be ta-  
ken by as-  
saulte.

De Of the walles of the  
double walles, & north a good space be-  
tween the two walles. The ground be-  
tweene the two was very plaine and trevell,  
and the walles some what breake. The  
towers therfore and the Gories getting  
assaulte to the uttermoste wall, albeit  
that there was bulwark and a most de-  
fence made againste theyn; yet they  
maune it by fire shot. When Bol-  
sarius (to whose charge that part was com-  
mitted) mistrustinge that he was not able  
to continue long againste the great po-  
wer of his enemies; lest theye in all  
haste to Bolsarius in what perill he  
stood, desiring him to come to his res-  
cue at the speede he could make. Bol-  
sarius somewhat moved with the mat-  
ter. Left sufficient defence behind him  
at the gate Salaria, and hymselfe with  
a hand of his best souldiers ranne the  
roewe the Citie to the same place. At  
his cominge thither the encounter  
was renewed a frethe; and the sould-  
iers beganne to take harte at the pre-  
sence of the enemyes.



serue of the Captayne. The Gothes  
has undermined the wall, and a great  
compaigne of them entering in at the  
breach tooke verie well the two walles.  
By meanes whereof the tyrante was  
verie sharpe and cruel in the same  
place. In the thirtieth came to this  
ende, that the Gothes were constrained  
to retyre out at the same gappe where  
they came in, with greate laughter  
and losse of their people. As sone as  
they were gotten oute, they enemies  
pursuynge hard vppon them, chased  
theym away, and set all they engines  
on fyre. The lyke chaunce happened  
vnto theym at the Gate Salaria. For  
the souldyers breakynge oute vppon  
theym, burnt vppe all they Turrets  
and other engynes. Thus was Rome  
in one daye bothe earnestlyc assaul-  
ted in manye places at ones, and ba-  
leantlye defended. There were slayn  
at these assaultes aboute thre thou-  
sand Gothes, but yet the spege en-  
dured still.

6301

E.v.

The

The Roman  
...  
...  
...

The repulse  
of the gothes  
at the fyrste  
assaulte.

## Of the waere of the

The Romaines  
murmur a-  
gainst Belisa-  
rius.

Belisarius wri-  
teth to the  
Emperour.

The Romaines albeit they had Belisarius in great admiration for his prowesse, yet they murmured against him in that against so great a puissance of vntooken he had with so small a handfull in comparison of y<sup>e</sup> great waerres & call the Citie of Rome into such extreme perill and imminent daunger. The which thing Belisarius perceyving, for it was not done in huther murther, although he had diuers other times before advertised y<sup>e</sup> Emperour Iustinian therof, yet notwithstanding being as then greatly moued with the matter, he wrote more earnestly vnto him, declaring the beselgement of the Citie of Rome, with the huge multitude of his enemies and the litle handfull of his owne men. For he saide he had bene faine to diminish his armye that he brought forth with him, by leauing garrisons of souldiers at Panormus and Syracuse in Sicilland by manninge of Naples Cum, & other places in Italye, as neede required for

they

their defence and safeguard: so that he  
had no more then but thousand remaining  
about him, and yet he was besieged w  
anthost of .C.C. .xx. The Romans on  
acquainted with such perills, would not  
endure the hazard of y<sup>e</sup> siege: As for his  
other part, he had once vowed to spend  
his life in the Emperours Justinians  
services, wherof he passed not  
greatly whether it came some w<sup>e</sup> late.  
Whoboth he said there was respecte to  
be had how much the same should re-  
dound to the honour or dishonour of  
the Empire of Rome.

The .xii. Chapter

The Emperour sendeth new succours in  
to Italy, Asmarus and Vigilius Cap-  
taines of the Gothes besedge Salons in  
Dalmatia, Virgis winneth Portus, and  
causeth all the Romans to be put to  
death whom he helde at Rauenna as  
hostages: Belisarius putterh all ynabie  
folke for the wars oute of the citie for  
consuming of victalls, and banisheth  
the pope ypon suspicion of treason.

## 82 Of the Warre of the

The Empe-  
rour sendeth  
new succours  
into Italye.

**T**he Emperour Iustinian was be-  
lieved to have moved at the receipte of  
these letters; and thereupon com-  
manded that certayne soldiers whi-  
ch had bene put in a readynesse before  
should immediately sayle into Italye ar-  
riving with all speed to take a great  
power. Valerian and Martia were  
appointed Captaynes of those soldier-  
es whiche he had already prepared;  
and whiche had wintered all the dead  
tyme of that yere in Aetoly and Acha-  
na. The newes hereof beinge  
broughte to Rome, put the Romans  
in good comfozte lookinge for they ar-  
rivall as sons as the tyme of the yere  
wold serve. While these thyngs were  
a dooynge at Rome, Alvarius and  
Vigilisalus Captaynes of the Gothes  
(whom Vitigis had sent with an host  
of men into Dalmatia, appointynge  
to theym moreouer for they more  
strengthe a nauye of shippes), be-  
sieged Salons bothe by sea and lande  
For Constantian perceyvinge bent  
selfe

The Gothes  
besiege Salons  
in Dalmatia.

felte to weake to matche so huge a po-  
wer as hys enemies had, fortified the  
Citie thoughtly before hand and aboue  
the spere. Durynge the which, some-  
tyme yllswinge oute of the towne, he  
dyd greate harme to the Gothes both  
by sea and by lande. In this meane  
time, Rome beganne to be more hard-  
ly distressed by the serrye. For Vitigis  
after the time that he had taken so dis-  
honorabie repulse at the foresayde as-  
saute, beyng therewith somewhat  
quickned, ceased not to seke & serche all  
meanes possible to be deuysed, where-  
by he myghte anoye hys beleeged ene-  
myes. There was a haven by the  
Sea syde standinge on the ryght hand  
of the Riuor Tyber, and adioynning  
to the same a Cytie enuyroned  
wyth a stronge wall. In the whyche  
place were wonte to be sette a lande  
all suche thynges as were broughte  
by water; and from thence agayne  
eyther by lande or by water were con-  
ueyed to Rome.

Vitigis wry-  
neth Portua,

Vitigis

## Of the warre of the

Alrigis therefore sending thither sodain  
 ly a great number of his souldiers, as-  
 sailed the said citie of Portua uniuates  
 and tooke it ere the towneismen could  
 put themselves in a readines to make  
 resystens aganst so greate a power of  
 the Gothes. By taking of this towne  
 strait wayes ensued great distresse at  
 Rome, when their vent of fetchng in  
 of corne and victiualls was ones stop-  
 ped. For the Gothes leauing a garison  
 of souldiers there, dyd kepe both the  
 towne and the mouth of Tiber suffer-  
 ing nothing to be conueyed in. It was  
 not longe after but that Alrigis sent  
 commaundement to Rauenna, that al  
 the Citizens of Rome, which (as is de-  
 clared) he led from thens and kept for  
 hostages should be put to death. Many  
 of them were of the nobility and many  
 of the commonaltie (sorely worthy per-  
 sonages) all the which tasted of one cup  
 sayng a few who hauinge ineling of  
 the matter before, escaped by flighte.  
 Amonge the which number were Cer-  
 uentinus

The cruell  
 commaun-  
 cement of Viti-  
 gis against the  
 Romaine  
 hostages .

Cerinthus & Reparatus the brother  
of Vigilius; that was afterward pope.  
For they having warning thereof, fled  
into Fraunce and saved their lives.  
the rest were all put to death. In the  
tyme that the Romaines incorned and  
lamented for the slaughter of theyr ci-  
tizens at Ravenna, there came ano-  
ther sorrow in the necke of it. For Be-  
lisarius feainge least graine shoulde  
faile and ware scarce, made proclama-  
cion that the citizens shoulde send away  
their wiues and children, togeth al tho-  
ther multitude that was binne and  
unable for the warres compelling bys-  
men of warre also to doe the lyke whi-  
ch had eyther Lemans or lackeys with  
in the towne. There were as yet two  
wayes left them to passe out at. One  
leading to Ostia by the left syde of the  
ryuer Tiber, and another through the  
fields cleane contrary from those places  
that were beseged by the camp. For the  
Gothes (as we haue sayd) did not enu-  
ron the whole Citie with their siege,  
but



## Of the warre of the

but onely from the gate of Aurelius to the gate that goeth to Breneste. Beyond those boundes they durst not be bold to be over bulke, or to stray ouer farre. For if they aduertured ouer farre from their Campe, they lightly ranne in daunger of commynge short home; they could not stirre any great way on lesse they went in greates companies. By meanes whereof it came to passe, that men myght at all tymes goe and come safely by the waye of Appius and the way of Ostia. The Romaines therefore sent for the their wyues and children and all their other people that were binneete for the warres. Wherof somme abode in Campanie, some at Naples and some in Sicill as eue ry man thought most for hys commoditie and behoofe. At Rome Belisarius gaue streyghte commaundemente and looked narrowlye to it, that the corne was deuoyded by the poll, to the entent no waste nor spoyle should be made of it. The same tyme Belisarius banished

Belisarius deuoideth corne by the pole,

banished the toke & liberties the pope  
 bypon suspicion of secret conspiracie  
 with the Gothes. And anone after  
 Innocentius was created high bishop  
 and installed in his see. Other of the  
 nobilitie of Rome also were banished  
 bypon the same suspicion, of the which  
 number was one Marcius, whose  
 great grandfather after the death of  
 Valentinian had usurped the name  
 and dignitie of the Emperour.

A pope ban-  
 shed vpon sus-  
 pition of treas-  
 on.

The .xij. Chapter

The ayde that the Emperour sent into Italy  
 commeth to Rome. Belisarius after practi-  
 sing his souldiers in skirmishes, encoun-  
 tured with the Gothes in a mayne battell,  
 and so overcome with great slaughter.

While these thinges were a do-  
 ing, Martine Valerian (whom  
 Justinian had sent forth as a the-  
 iet defense) came unto Rome, bring-  
 ing with them a thousande five hun-  
 dred holemen, the which for the most

New succour  
 commeth to  
 Rome.

# Of the Battle of the

partes that all dayes in the  
 an heynge resonated by the con-  
 nyng of the Dr. Doulgers, determi-  
 ned to order his forces after such  
 therfor then he shold be before. For  
 he was not possible to stand by with  
 in the City heynge of the wallen;  
 but euery day sent out his light horse  
 men and skirmished with his ene-  
 mies in open fyeldes. By meanes  
 wherof it came to passe, that both  
 partes were wonderfullie enflamed,  
 and nothyng was lefte vnattempted.  
 For Belisarius beynge a most expert  
 capitaine in feates of armes, taught his  
 horsemen what they should do, shewing  
 them how farre they should go, & where  
 and when they should stay. One while  
 he sent out his horsemen sodainly at the  
 gates Salarn and Vincian, and dis-  
 quietted the Gothes that encamped  
 therabouts. Another while he would  
 give oute at Handins gate as be-  
 yng with the Gothes that lay between  
 Adrianis tymbre & the bridge Spilatus.

Belis. practi-  
 seth his Soul-  
 dyers in Skyr-  
 mishes.

New Rome  
 of the  
 Rome

In these conflicts the souldiers of Belisarius beganne to preuaile. Not that they were able to match the whole power of the enemyes horsemen, but because they seemed to be so good for them being equally matched as many to as many, or some what mo in number then they them selues were, and to be of more cunning and audacitie in their seighting. His horsemen being thus by little and litle practised, began to set light by the horsemen of the enemyes. And the belleged beganne to take courage and confidence in themselves. So be they, it came to that point, that they would not any more flye, but fought it out in the playne field with hand strokes.

For the Captaynes and the souldiers had been so sore at Belisarius, and had so often and so earnestly entreated him, that he determined to give some greater encounter.

A battell betweene the Gothes and Belisarius.

Fig.

## Of the battell of the

And thereupon he disposed his armye  
in this wyse. First he commanded  
one hand to issue out at the gate of Au-  
relins and to stand in battell rays he  
saw Adrianus tumber against they  
enemies. The charge of this bande he  
committed to Valentine Lieutenant  
of the horsemen, geuing him besides  
his horsemen a certayne of the olde ex-  
pert footemen, and of the people of  
Rome, which of their own fre wyll re-  
quested the thyng at his hand. He wold  
not haue these footemen stand with  
the horsemen, but willed them to take  
the hills which rise ouer the plegues  
on the left hand of Janiculum. And he  
gaue Valentine commandement to  
make a shewe as though he woulde e-  
uer geue an onset vppon the enemye,  
but in anye wyse not to encounter  
with them vlesse he were compelled.  
For his mynde was no moore but to  
defeyne that parte of the Gothes that  
encamped in that place, styll there,  
to the entent they shoulde not succour  
they

they: folowes at the gate Saleria  
where he determined to fight. When  
made he two other battels, one at the  
gate Saleria, and another at the gate  
Pinciana. And in them both he placed  
the horsemen in the forewarde, and  
the footemen in the reerward, com-  
maunding eche battell to issue out  
at they: severall gates and to marche  
toward they: enemies. Vitigis kynge  
of the Gothes hauyng intelligence by  
certayne runnagates that he shoulde  
haue battell the next morowe, cau-  
sed the Gothes to arme them selues  
by the breake of the daye. In orde-  
ring of hys battelles, he set hys foot-  
men in the middes, and on eche syde  
of them hys horsemen, as it were in  
flaynges. In thys order he proceded a-  
gainst Belisarius and gaue hym bat-  
tell. The Souldoyers on bothe sydes  
encountered together very spercely.  
And the Captaynes folowynge after  
them, Belisarius on the one syde and  
Vitigis on the other, encouraged

Of the wante of the  
their parties. At the beginning of the  
battell, the Souldiers of Belisarius  
were farre to strong for their enemies,  
and many of the Gothes were slaine.  
The battell was foughte harde by  
their campe, by meanes whereof the  
Gothes abounding in multitude, sent  
euer freshe and freshe in feed of them  
that were ouerthrowen. In this soyte  
the conflic lasted vntyll it was noone,  
neyther partye gettyng advantage  
of other. Howbeit the Souldyers of  
Belisarius foughte moze cherefullye.  
The Gothes helde it out onely with  
sufferaunce. In the meane tyme the  
battell that stood at the Sepulchre of  
Adrian, encountred with theyr ene-  
mies. For the people of Rome de-  
scendynge from the hilles gaue  
charge vpon the Gothes.  
And Valentine perceyvinge his peo-  
ple entangled wth theyr enemyes,  
marched forewarde wth the Hoste  
whereof he was Captayne, from the  
tunbe of Adrian, and assailed his  
enemies



enemies also. By reason whereof  
 the Gothes were not able to endure  
 long against them; in especiall ye for  
 as much as they were murthered by  
 the great number that came downe  
 from the hilles; so that being not  
 able to recover agayne to thep; Canis-  
 pe, they were fayne to flye further of.  
 So the Romaynes that came  
 from the hygher groundes fell by  
 and by to the refuge of thep; enemies.  
 Wentis. By meanes whereof not  
 that they them selues pursued thep; <sup>it is yll fish-</sup>  
 enemies; nor yet the souldyers, <sup>ing before</sup>  
 but suffered them to goe where they <sup>the nette.</sup>  
 would. For the souldyers percey-  
 uinge them to fall to refuge; to  
 the entente they would not lose  
 thep; parte of the praye; lest the  
 pursue of thep; enemies; and retour-  
 ned to spoyle thep; Wentis also. And  
 so the Gothes being let slip, when they  
 shoulde haue beene taken, they  
 fled.

Of the battell of the  
salve that no body followed after them  
stayed in the next mountaines. From  
thence beholding they looked to be  
pulled downe and carped away, when  
they perceyued howe they enemies  
kept neither any order nor warrelike  
discipline, they encouraged one ano-  
ther and gaue a newe charge vpon  
them. With some (by reason they were  
laden and shattered in gatheringe of  
the spoyle) they easily ouercame, and  
so both saued their tentes and also re-  
couered their pray. By that tyme For-  
time beganne to chaunge her copie a-  
bout the hinger campe also. For the  
Bothishe footemen resorting in great  
number out of the herte campe, cast  
them selues vpon Belisarius horse-  
men, and keuering themselves wth  
their shildes in manner of a baulde,  
pressed so sore vpon the forefront of  
their battell, that they compelled  
them to lose grounde. The whyche  
thyng when they horsemen that  
stood on the ryght wyng perceyued,  
they

they all helpe the Bohemians to be-  
men on the spot. But he beinge not  
able to abate the hunte and force of  
them any long tyme, at length re-  
red to the wayne battell of the foot-  
men. The which beinge not of strength  
sufficient to withstande the violence of  
the enemye, was with great slaugh-  
ter lykewyse put to flight. Whome be it,  
there were two Principians named  
Principius and Tarunt, whose  
manhode and audacitie was well ap-  
proved in that place to the great com-  
mendation and immortal fame. For  
at suche tyme as all the rest fled, they  
two hepinge theyr standings, put them  
selues against the whole power of the  
Gothes, and kepte them occupied, so  
thentent that theyr compaigne mighte  
have space to recouer the citie, so long  
untill Principius beinge pittifullye  
mangled all his body ouer, after long  
seghing fell downe, and aboute hym  
two and fortye of his retinue: and  
Tarunt beinge of lyke valiantnes

Belis and hyd  
men put to  
fleyght.

The valiant-  
nes of Princi-  
pins and Tar-  
unt.

## Of the Battle of Tewkesbury

and courage; when he had lost much  
blood at his woundes, and that his  
strength beganne to faile; was carried  
out of the battell to the Wynton gate by  
his brother whether he would or no;  
and there fell downe dead.  
After whose departure the Souldy-  
ers ranne full flyght toward the Citie.

The peryll of  
the that were  
ouercome.

The Romans standing vpon the  
walles byd that the gates against them;  
for feare least their enemies should ha-  
ue entered in with them; by meanes  
whereof a great sorte of the souldyers  
were shutt out who getting over the  
Wainwate, stood with their backs to  
the wales and their faces toward their  
enemies, hauing no way to saue their  
lyues but one, which was to be defen-  
ded by them that stood vpon the wal-  
les. For the most part of them hauing  
eyther broken their weapons in the bat-  
tell, or els thowen them away in the  
chace; had not wherewith to defend  
them selues howbeit those that were  
vpon the battelmentes defended  
them

them with stones. Thys battell being  
begonne at the Campe of the Gothes  
at the laste ended harde at the gates  
and walles of the Towne. There  
were slayne of Belisarius men a great  
number, and those of the valiantest  
and best practised.

**¶ The.xiii. Chapter.**

**¶** Of dyuers skymishes duringe the  
continuance of the syege, the  
Gothes entiron the Citye wyth  
another Campe wherevpon grow-  
eth scarcerye, and anon after en-  
seweth the plague. Belisarius  
by hys pollicye caused scarcerye  
in the Gothys campe likewyse,  
into the whiche the plague spre-  
deth it selfe also.

**After**

## Of the waite of the

The syndged  
child dreadyth  
tye.

**A**fter this battell Belisarius ab-  
steyned certayne dayes from seg-  
ging, and was content to be-  
send the walles onely. At the length,  
when he had well watched his soul-  
diers, he beganne to lead them south a-  
gaine. But he durst not any more enc-  
counter with his whole power. Only  
he perseuered to make lighte skyrmiss-  
shes as he had beynn wont to do before.  
Of the which some were very notable  
specially suche as were agaynst those  
Gothes that encamped on the hyther  
syde of the brydge Miluius outragainst  
the gate of Aurelius. For in the same  
placc is a plaine grounde very fytt for  
hoysemen to skyrmisshe in, and in the  
same playne standeth a theatre buyl-  
ded in olde tyme for maisters of fence  
to playe at weapons in. Aboute the  
same theatre were many whote skyr-  
misshes. Because that eyther the soul-  
diers of Belisarius dyd take and vse  
it for a campe, or elles the Gothes pre-  
uentynge them layed ambushes in  
the

Skyrmisshes  
aboute the  
brydge Milui-  
us.

the same. Moreover, both at the gate  
 Salaria, and the gate Vinciana, daye  
 by daye was skirmishing, almost eue-  
 ry daye. The Gothes therefore con-  
 sidering howe the siege was lyke to  
 continue longe, thoughte there was  
 no hope of wyning of the Citie anye  
 other waye then by famine. For albeit  
 that the takinge alwaies of y<sup>e</sup> haven might  
 seeme to haue bene a great anoyance:  
 yet not withstandinge (as mans witte  
 is imaginative specially in extremitie)  
 the hopes and such other shippes of bur-  
 then as were wont to arrive at Port-  
 na, arrived at Antium, and there be-  
 loading their corne and other necessa-  
 ries sent them from thence to Rome  
 by land. The Gothes therefore desy-  
 ringe to cutte of this commoditie from  
 the Romans also, pitched the eighth  
 Campe aboute the Citie betwene the  
 wyche that leadeth into Latium, and  
 the wyche of Appius. For there are  
 in the same place two conduytes, the  
 whiche crossinge eche other doe stretch

Aduersarie ma-  
 keth men  
 wyse.



## Of the warre of the

as it were into two armies, and lea-  
 ting a certayne space betwixte them  
 do mete a gaine a good longe of. They  
 are from the Citie aboute fyue myles.  
 The grounde betwene the sayde ar-  
 mies the Gothes tooke and enclosed  
 with a Wall of stone layed with loime.  
 And so by that meanes they hadde a  
 strong and well fortified campe, wher  
 in they placed tenen thousande horse-  
 men, who incessing bothe the upper  
 wall and the neather coast, stopped up  
 the way into Latium, the waye of Ap-  
 plus, and the waye to Ostia carrynge  
 of all libertie of conueying in of corne.  
 Through this, they that were bele-  
 ged stood in worse case then ener they  
 dyd, and it was none other lyke but  
 that Rome shoulde be famished. yet  
 not withstandinge as longe as there  
 was corne in the feldes, the souldy-  
 ers woulde steale out of the towne in  
 the night tyme, and fetch in corne, the  
 which they solde very deere to the Citi-  
 zens, and so relieved the necessitie for a  
 whyle.

The great pes-  
 ril that Rome  
 stood in.

non. 15. 1577

1577

boyle: But when that the shift once  
 sayed them all things laye in bitter de-  
 spaire. Soles was the founte at the  
 highest and the dayes at the longest,  
 and the plague beganne to raigne in the  
 towne, so that diuers dyed, not only of <sup>A plague.</sup>  
 the common people, but also of Bel-  
 sarius souldiers. They were brought  
 to a great distresse, and to a foyr after-  
 deale, and therefore the Romaines  
 resorving to Belisarius, bewayled  
 theyr heauie misfortune, in that they <sup>A pious com-  
playnt.</sup>  
 had brought themselves to such extre-  
 mite by hepping theyr sayth and allet  
 goans, to walke the Quiperoire up-  
 pon hyppocrisie. For theyr Citizens  
 had bene miserablie murdered at Ra-  
 uenna by their enemye, their cite dispo-  
 nobly besieged by the Gothes, all thing  
 gre without y walls wasted & spoiled, &  
 within the walls oppressed with intol-  
 lerable famine & perurte of all things.  
 well therefore they besought hym to  
 leade them forth against theyr enemye,  
 for it were better for them to dye like  
 men

## Of the warre of the

A rough an-  
swere.

When both their weapons in their hand  
then to pine away for hunger and to a  
hyde so great and so dishonorable cala-  
mities. When Belsharius heard them  
make their mone in this sort, he gave  
them scarce so gentle an answer as the  
case required. He said they were mis-  
served and ledde by rashnesse ac-  
cording to the nature of common peo-  
ple, whiche are wont to be ledde by  
rage rather then ruled by reason. They  
knew well enough that he was wont  
to be alwayes ruled by Councell and  
to doe his matters by discretion, and  
not by willfullnes. He looked for an ar-  
mye of men from the Emperour, the  
whiche beinge ones come, if they  
were then so willinge to fighte as  
they made themselves to be, he might  
be able to warrant them victory with-  
oute faile. He said Armin did bring  
with them an infinite deale of corn  
and therefore he willed them to be-  
parte and to lette them alone with  
the order of the warres.

The

The Romanes with these wordes say, the wise practice and policie of Belshazzar.  
 they recomforted or rather put in feare  
 he beganne to imagin and deuise with  
 himselfe, by what meanes he myghte  
 bying scarcenesse of corne amonge the  
 Gothes. For the performance wherof  
 he practised this policie. He sent Con-  
 stantin and Traiane with a thousand  
 hoysmen vnto Taracine, and Martine  
 and Seuthis with fyue hundred vnto  
 Tibur: and he placed another bande at  
 Alba. Vnto all these he gaue comma-  
 dement that to the uttermoste of their  
 power they shuld stoppe all victuallers  
 from the Gothish Campe, and helpe  
 to saueconduct them that were willing  
 to goe to Rome. And to the intent that  
 the Campe which laye at the Conduyt  
 should not annoy them, he caused a bul-  
 warke to be fortified at the church of S.  
 Paule, and appointed a troope of horse  
 men toward in the same place, to the  
 intent to defend the wayes (as farre as  
 they could) from thinuasions of the Go-  
 thes. The church of S. Paule is vnto  
 Reueres had  
 to religion.

## Of the waite of the

the gate toward Ostia, quite & cleane  
another way from the church of S. Pe-  
ter, both of them standing without  
the towne and eche of them hauinge a  
porch from the gate of the Citie to the  
Church. These two temples of the A-  
postles The Gothes in all the tyme of  
their siege did neuer violate. The  
prieestes continuinge in them dyd their  
deuine service freely wythoute inter-  
ruption or trouble, as they had bene  
accustomed to doe in foretymes. Con-  
stantine and Traiane therefore goyng  
to Aracine, when they had broughte  
Antonia the wyfe of Belisarius at  
Naples and there lefte her, retour-  
ned backe agayne and spoyled all the  
townes in those quarters, whiche  
ministred helpe and succour to the  
Gothes, and within shorte space  
they broughte to passe, that nothing  
at al was conueyed to the Gothes out  
of those places. Martine and Genthis  
also goyng to Tibur when they had re-  
paired the walles of that towne which  
were

Antonia the  
wyfe of Beli-  
sarius.

## **Gothes in Italy. 50.**

were decayed, vpon daily molest and  
disquiet the Gothes out of that place.  
By some meanes or other, & wold not  
suffe any graine to be caried to theyy  
campe, & the same thing did they in like  
wise & were sent to Alba. By meanes  
whereof wthin very short space, it came  
to passe & the Gothes which were & be  
speyers, were put to as much distresse  
as they that were besieged. And be-  
sides the scarcetye of corne, the pesti-  
lence also had spredde it selfe into the  
campe of the Gothes.

Scarcetie and  
pestilence in  
the Gothische  
Campe.

### **¶ The xiiiij. Chapter.**

¶ A new suppliment of souldiers commeth  
from thempetour, for the saufe conuey  
whereof vnto Rome Belisarius polittique  
ly prouiderth to the great slaughter of the  
Gothes; who thevpon enter in commu-  
nication of peace, so that a truce is taken  
whiles Ambassadors may go and come  
from thempetour to whom the determi-  
natio of all their cōtrouersies is referred.

**G. G.**

**Table**

A newe sup-  
plement of  
souldiers.

## Of the waite of the

**W**hile these things were in doing,  
Austuria sent another hoste of in-  
fante into Italy. They were of Thra-  
cian horsemen eight hundred, of whom  
John the sonne of his brother Vitulian  
had the leadinge: and a thousand and  
three hundred mustered in other pla-  
ces, under the conducte of Alexander  
Marcent and Zeno. Moreover three  
thousand footemen which came by wa-  
ter ledde by Baule and Conon. Also  
there were at Naples foure hundred  
footemen prepared by Procopius of  
Cesarea. All these bandes assemblyng  
themselues together, determyned to  
goe to Rome, they brought with them  
great plenty and store of victuals. The  
horsemen marched by the sea coast, and  
the footemen were conveyed by wa-  
ter. In the same flete was broughte  
great abundaunce of corne, and much  
corne was also caried by land in wa-  
gons. Belisarius hauig knowledge of  
theyr commynge, for feare leasse the  
Gothes should meete wpyth them and  
inter-

As the  
consist  
the G  
Camp

A little pol-  
lice.



interrupt them, inuented this pollsaie. He commaunded the gate of Flamin-  
nius (whych he had dammed by from  
the begynnyng of the siege,) to be ope-  
ned in the nyght tyme and the baggage  
taken away wherewithall it was stop-  
ped. The whych beyng done he sent  
certayne of his souldyers thither the  
next mornyng by the breake of the  
daye ready harnessed and well appoin-  
ted, byddyng them putte themselves  
in arape and so kepe them close wyth-  
oute noyse. When he sent Aratane  
and Diogenes wyth a thousand horse-  
men oute at the Pincian gate, com-  
maundyng them to runne to the  
campe of theyr enemies with as much  
noyse as they coulde, and when their  
enemies were yssued out vpon them,  
to retyre backe agayne, and not to  
staye before they came to the Gate  
where they went forth. These thinges  
beyng in all poyntes thus accompli-  
shed, whyles they were syghtyng  
at the Pincian Gate, Belisarius

## Of the waite of the

sobalntie issuing out at the gate of Fla-  
 minius with the rest of his armye,  
 made straight to the campe of the Co-  
 thes, where he founde all thynges un-  
 prouided and in manner emptye on that  
 syde, as they that mistrusted no harme  
 at all from the gate of Flaminias, be-  
 cause that it had bene longe closed by.  
 So that it wanted litle but that he  
 had wonne their Campe. Then tour-  
 ning hym selfe towards the Pinclan  
 gate, & there getting his enemyes in  
 the middes betwene his two hostes, he  
 by assailling them on the backes, and  
 those that were fledde, by retourning  
 fierly vppon them befoze, brake them  
 with an incredible slaughter. And vppon  
 this Battell there fell suche a  
 terrible feate amonge them, that  
 they doubled theyr watche in their  
 Campe, and tooke care so nothinge  
 so much, as howe to defende them-  
 selues from the perillous of Wellfa-  
 ring. The enemyes beinge by this  
 manner of assaulte, and not beinge able  
 to stande againste them, they fledde  
 in great confusion.

a great slaugh-  
 ter of the  
 Cothes.

meanes troubled and putte to shame,  
the Emperours Armys without which  
let came unto Ostia. The Emperours  
therefore beinge worried and vexed  
with many displeasures, and desiringe  
that, understandinge howe the  
crueltye of the Goths shoulde come to the  
ayde of Belisarius, began to consaie  
of breakinge by the siege. For by that  
tyme a great part of the campe was  
diminished eyther by the plage or elles  
by the sword, and many had bene  
fayne to forsake the Campe, eyther for  
theyr woundes or elles for that they  
were sicke. Whiche therefore sendinge  
Commissioners unto Rome (after  
that many thynges had bene alledged,  
and answered on bothe sydes to and  
fro, as concernynge the equitye of  
theyr case,) at length agreed to re-  
ferre the determination of theyr con-  
trouersyes to the Emperour Justi-  
nian, and he to decide the matter as he  
shoulde thinke good.

True taken  
for a time.

Wherupon Ambassadors were sent  
to him, and a truce taken for thre mo-  
nethes vntill they myghte returne a-  
gaine, and for the better obseruynge  
of the truce, and performance of con-  
uenienses, pledges were given and  
taken on both sides. Whiche thinges  
were thus set at stape, the above  
said and victualls that were meete to  
be sent at this came to Rome, a myght  
allie to both bylande and byllande  
sea and vnder water.

**Thus endeth the tale**  
**of**  
**Doone.**

# The second booke <sup>53.</sup>

of Lancelot Aretine, concerning  
the warres in Italy  
against the Gothes.

The first Chapter.

There is the occasion of grudge be-  
tweene the Gothes and the Imperials  
which groweth to alteration, so that  
in the end the truce is broken. Darius  
Bishop of Millane enformeth Belisari-  
us of the good will of the Millane-  
ners towards the Emperour, and is re-  
mised with great thanks. Belisarius is  
put in danger of his life by one of  
his Petitioners, whom he would  
have punished for his misbehaviour  
the Gothes going about to steale the  
City and so winne it by treason are  
suddenly detected.



Vpon the things haue  
thus at a steale, and that  
the warres ceased by  
reason of the truce that  
was take; (Belisarius  
yet nevertheless in the

G. b.

means

Causes of al-  
tercation.

Of the warre of the  
meanwhile keepinge Rome, and the  
Gothes their Campe in hostiles) so  
daynly there fortuned complaints and  
altercation for breakinge of the truce  
contrarie to promise, upon this occasi-  
on. There was (as I told you before)  
a garrison of Gothes at the Citie Poz-  
tua. And the souldiers of the said gar-  
rison when victuals failed them, for-  
ake the towne. They were not so long  
goinge out of it, but Paul Captaine  
of the Plantiens, remaining with the  
navy at Ostia, entered into it. And  
within a while after, the souldiers  
of Belisarius receaved another Citty  
in Lusitania into the sea syde cal-  
led Centumcellas, beinge by the waye  
lefte vpp by the Gothes. And when  
the Gothes abandoned vpp the Ci-  
tye Alba amongst the marshes, after  
the same sorte, and the souldiers of  
Belisarius took it. When which  
knewe that his enemyes had taken  
those Cities, he sent commissioners  
to Rome, to complaine of violating  
the

The Treate contrarye to the articles  
of agreement. In that Boetius, Cent-  
umcellus, and other towne of the  
Gothes, contrarye to all equitye  
and conscience, were taken from them  
for the Gothes had not given them  
by the, but such as were there in  
garreison were comynge to hym at his  
commandement, and should have  
soughte returned into the same a-  
gain that whiche they did they thought  
they myghte the freelye have done it  
by reason of the Treas. And there-  
fore of reason, restitution oughte to  
be made. Belisarius made answer  
to the commissioners in this wyse. Re-  
turne (ye he) to the kynge your Ma-  
jesty, and tell hym that as so, those thin-  
ges that he alledgeth as concerninge  
the ransome of his garreisons from  
their charges, to send them thither  
agayne, are but feyned matters.  
For it was easie to be sene for what  
consideration the Gothes forsooke  
those Cytyes.



## Of the warre of the

He confessed that it was not lawfull for  
him by the truce, to take them perforce  
or to steale the, but to enter vpon such  
as had no owners, nor anye bodie to  
keepe possession, that he sayd was not  
forbidden. Vpon this matter rose pre-  
uie grudge and hartburnyng, the Go-  
thes sekynge meanes to requite Beli-  
sarius with the lyke. For those thre ci-  
ties being taken, did Belisarius great  
pleasure and seruice for the warres.  
Winter becom on a pace. And Belisa-  
rius hauing men of warre good store,  
determined to send forth his hartmen  
to winter in the country. And her vpon  
besides those that went into other pla-  
ces, he sent 999. into the Country of  
the Vlcents.ouer whō he made cap-  
taine John Vitahian geuinge him in-  
structions what he would haue hym to  
do. Thera were in the same countrey  
the wyues and children of the Gathes,  
for the husbands & fathers were all come  
to the siege of Rome as many as were  
able to beare armour. If the truce con-  
tinued

continued, he said he should not stirre, but  
if the Gothes should happen to breake  
any thinge contrarye to the articles  
of the Treate, then he willed hym to  
make handes and foote, and to take  
as manie townes as he could. If any  
towne made resistance he commaun-  
ded hym to besyge it, and not to  
passe from it untill he had wonne it.  
For he thoughte it shoulde not be for  
hys ease to procede onward, and leaue  
the Townes of hys enemyes behynde  
hym. With these wordes and instruc-  
tions Belisarius sent John amonge  
the Vicentes with an armye. The  
verye same tyme Datius Bysshoppe  
of Millaine, and with hym certayne  
of the heade Cittizens came to Bel-  
sarius declaringe vnto hym, that the  
Cytie of Millaine shoulde be at the  
Emperours commaundement, if he  
woulde send hether to sende a garry-  
son thither. For they were of power  
sufficient of theynselues to buye  
the Gothes not onely out of Millaine,  
but

Datius bis-  
shoppe of  
Millaine.

# Of the content of the

but also oute of all Lumberges, yf so  
 be it that the Emperour woulde but  
 surely beare the name of it. Belis-  
 rius entertaynyng theyn curiously,  
 and geuyng theyn mooste hartly than-  
 kes wth gentle and honorable wordes  
 wylled theyn to putte no doubt in  
 the matter, assuryng that when  
 tyme serued he woulde fullfyll theyr  
 requestes. Duringe this tyme that  
 all thynges thus prospered and follo-  
 wed theyr desyres, there happened  
 an horrible daunger, the whiche in  
 one moment had almoste tourned all  
 thynges hye syde downe. There  
 was one Praxidius a citizen of Rome  
 who beyng wout to dwell at Narni-  
 na, in the begynnyng of this warre  
 stode alwaye from thence, and came  
 to Rome. In his iourney the soul-  
 dyers of Constantyne whiche laye at  
 Spolet, had taken from hym a sword  
 curiously wroughte and costlye be-  
 wysshed. The man beyng robbed and  
 taking

A sodayne  
 daunger.

Darius  
 hope  
 will

takeinge the displeasure in yll parte,  
had made complaint thereof to Belisarius  
with request to haue his good  
refloxed again. And Belisarius had ge-  
uen commaundement that it shoulde  
be so. But by meanes of the warre  
and of the syege whiche afterwarde  
ensued, the souldyers beyng e-  
ther wyse occupied and the Captayne  
busied aboute weightier matters, the  
thyng was delayed. At the length  
in this tyme ( as I sayde ) whyles  
all thynges were in sorfull estate, as  
Belisarius rode through the towne,  
Melsidius caughte bys Horse by the  
bydle, and wyth a lowd and com-  
playnyng voyce, in the audyence  
of a greate number, asked hym yf  
it were meete that a Cyprien of  
Rome ( who abandonyng all that  
euer he had to the enemy had fled a-  
way naked ) shuld also be robbed by his  
souldiers of that little y he had caried  
away w him, and be thus wrongfully

and  
as he

## Of the foure of the

and inturiously dealt withall. He sayd  
he had oftentimes putte by his com-  
playnt vnto him of the wrong and vio-  
lence that had bene offered, and coulde  
haue no redresse, and yet they that had  
robbed hym, had bys good wythin the  
Cytie, and dyd weare it daylye before  
hys face. These wordes dyd styre the  
patience of Belisarius deepe sore.

And therfore as soone as he came home  
he caused Constantine to be called be-  
foze hym (for they were his souldiers  
that had taken awaye the sworde) and  
gaue hym a great rebuke for neglec-  
tyng of his commaundement so often-  
tymes in deliuctyng of the sworde.  
Barry (or Constantine) I wyll rather  
thowle it into the Tyber, then I wyll  
restore it to that Warlet. This was ve-  
ry lewdly and presumptuously answere-  
d. When sayde Belisarius vnto hym,  
art not thou vnder me: Yes sayd he, for  
as much as it is the Emperours plea-  
sure. But yet for all that, in this one  
thyng I wyll neuer be ruled by you  
whyles



..7 Of the manner of the  
channells of the conduites in the night  
tyme, and after wards by sending out  
the rigger in boats nere unto the dikes  
of Spars. But they missed of their pur-  
pose in both places. For in the channel  
theye olde legges bein moved them con-  
pert toothing, by means whereof the  
channel was stopped: they enioined  
from getting out. And at the field of  
Spars their treason was detected: so  
their attempt was made frustrat. The  
treason was devised in this wise. As mo-  
rall Charlette that dwelleth by St. Pe-  
ters church (the mother as is shewed  
before never offered harme or discom-  
fort to that place, but in honour of the  
posse preserved both the dunyages  
there and those that dwelled in them  
on hurt) had secret conference with  
certaines of betraying & kille. And to bring their  
purpose to effect, they devised this po-  
lice. Beneath the field of Spars in one  
place the walles were berre, because  
they decayed for lacke of looking to, by  
reason (as I thinke) they had ben before  
alarmade .i. times



hymes, trusted altogether to the defense  
of the Myner. Whiche therefore caused  
lyghters barges and all kind of boats  
to be put in a readinesse at the byrge  
whilome. For had he once set any con-  
venient number of boatswaine, ouer  
on thother side of the river, he thought  
it would be an ensenqueter. After the  
landing of the first, to come ouer all  
more and more in the same vessels. He  
wanted nothing so much as that the  
watchmen that watched on that side  
should esche hym and charge the de-  
uise. For the auoyding of which doubt,  
he corrupted the two watchmen for a  
piece of money, to further thys at-  
tempt. To whome he deliuered a sle-  
ping powder willing them to geue it  
the watchmen with wine, to the intent  
that when they had dronke the same,  
they might fall into a dead slepe. After  
these conuincences were thus deuised, &  
agreed vpon, the two of them beyng  
Stephen with repentance, disclosed the  
whole matter to Basilarius, and  
there

37 Of the Doome of the  
there vppon the other beynge taken  
with the slepe medicine aboute hym,  
that the kynge hadde geuen hym,  
was put to the torture and compelled  
to hitte all the order of the matter.  
The whiche done, Belisarius caused  
his nose and eares to be cut of, and  
solyng hym vppon an Asse, sent hym  
out at the Vincian gate to the Gothish  
Campe, to the intent that Vltigis  
might perceiue how that his close wor-  
king was detected, and his secret prac-  
tises brought to light.

The .ij. Chapter.

Vpon the disconcerie of the treason the  
truce ceaseth, Iohn Vitalian wynneth al-  
l the towres from the Gothes and among  
gest other Arminie, vpon the takinge  
wherof they breake vp their liege before  
Rome.

The truce bro-  
ken betwene  
the Gothes &  
Belisarius.

When Belisarius had so openly dis-  
couered these their craftie prac-  
tises, he thought it not meete to  
obserue the truce any longer to them.

¶ Here

Wherupon he wrote to John that he  
 should execute his commission. He  
 with his two thousand horsemen scour-  
 ring the countrey of 500 miles though,  
 took the wyues and children of the  
 Gothes prisoners, and foraged & spoy-  
 led all the whole countrey from the one  
 ende to the other. Procerius encounte-  
 ring with Uglithens bridle of Alti-  
 gis by the fathers side, coming against  
 him with an armie of the Gothes; he  
 vanquished him and slew the captaine  
 himself w<sup>th</sup> a great part of his holle; & so  
 lyke a conqueror ranged ouer al 500 whole  
 countrey. When he had wonne many  
 tolines & that he was about to besiege  
 Auxin, it was not knownen unto  
 him what a slender garrison was with  
 in the towne, but yet the place was of it  
 self very strong & defensible. And there-  
 fore thinking it folly to spend the tyme  
 in wayne aboute the besieging thereof,  
 he kept on his journey forwarde. The  
 same opinion also had he of the besie-  
 ging of Urbine. For the citie being

Of the winter of the  
wel sozitled & strong of it self, somed of  
necessitie to aske a long time in y<sup>e</sup> siege  
therof; & he had put at his hope in speede  
celeritie. He tooke y<sup>e</sup> autumn & winter,  
and then brought his army against A  
rimine in hope to get it, because he had  
heard saye that the men of Arimine  
could not well agree with the Gothes.  
When he had once brought his hoste  
to this towne, he cast such a terrour up  
pon the Gothes thereby, that they durst  
not abyde the reboutes; but remoued  
vnto Rauennagand the towne which  
open their gates to let him in. By this  
meanes John toke Arimine, leauing  
behinde two stronge cities manned by  
the Gothes; namely Auximum and  
Urbine. All the which doinges were  
cleane contrarye to Belisarius com  
maundements. Whosoeit he thought  
it better to be sure of Arimine, then to  
spende hys tyme baynly in lying wylt  
aboute Auximum and Urbine. 142  
Wherevnto he was the rather per  
suaded

feared, because that Arimine was  
 so neere neyghbour vnto Rauenna be-  
 ing taken; it was not lykelye that  
 the Gothes should tary any long tyme  
 after at the siege of Rome, but rather  
 make hault to come hault to the defence  
 of Rauenna; and the playes there  
 aliooted. The which thing came so to  
 passe in dede. For as soone as the Go-  
 thes vnderstood that Arimine was ta-  
 ken, they determined to breake by  
 their siege befoze Rome, and to depart  
 thence. Vitigis therefore within a few  
 dayes after let fier on his tentes, and  
 with all the whole power of the Go-  
 thes, dislodged. In his rettying he suf-  
 fered great losse. For when the one  
 halfe of his armye was passed the  
 brydge, Belisarius commaunded his  
 men to let vppon them that were be-  
 hynde; amonge whome he made  
 suche a slaughter, that a greate  
 number of them that escaped  
 his handes, to passe in gettinge  
 hilly.

The Gothes  
 break vp their  
 siege before  
 Rome.

over the bridge were threelove houses  
on both sides and destroyed. This siege  
of the cite of Rome endured a whole  
year and nyne dayes, taking his be-  
ginning about the xiiij. of the daye of  
March. Nowe I must pursue the action  
of either partes, and what promission  
was made on both sides after the be-  
king up of the siege.

The .iii. Chapter.

Vidgis besieginge Arimine is by the dili-  
gence and industrie of John disapoynted  
of an assault that he determined to have  
geven to the towne, and repulsed with  
great losse.

**V**idgis albeit he made speede to-  
ward Ravenna, yet not withstan-  
ding he coveted to kepe the citie  
of Petruia and of other Provinces in  
theyr accustomed obedience. And ther-  
fore he placed at Cladium a thousande  
horsemen, as manye at Ariminus,  
foure hundred at Rubert, foure thou-  
sande

sande at Ariminum, at Urbine, & thons-  
sande, & one hundred at Cesena, and as  
many at Monsiferat. And he him-  
selfe with the rest of his armie went to  
besiege Ariminum. Belisarius after the  
departure of the Gothes, comman-  
ded Martinus and Aldiger with a thou-  
sande horsemen to make hast to Ari-  
mine, & to bring John & his horsemen  
that were with him from thence, pla-  
cing footmen there in their steads. The  
whiche things he did to the intent he  
would not have that bande (wherein  
were the best horsemen of the hoste) be-  
sieged by the enemye. For if so be it  
that Ariminum were manned with foot-  
men, he thoughte that the Gothes  
would not bestowe theyr labour in be-  
sieging of it. And if they shoulde be-  
siege it, he thought the footmen  
shuld be better able to endure out the  
siege then horsemen, for as muche as  
it is a difficult matter to keepe horses  
in a siege, and footmen might easily  
be conveyed to Ariminum at all tymes

Virigis goeth  
to besage A-  
rimine,



10 Of the battell of the

by water from Ancon, to the new  
 before had yelde it selfe unto him  
 Herobon, Aldiger and Martine for  
 holding no time, by reason wherof  
 lasse sake from theyr enemyes and  
 came unto Arimine. For the others  
 by reason of the huge multitude of  
 their armye, were compelled to take  
 more leysure in their journey, whereas  
 the other beinge byght harnessed, out  
 went they in a greate waye. And when  
 they were come to Arimine and had  
 decayed the mynde and countenance  
 ment of Belisarius, John would not  
 they obey hymselfe, nor yet suffer  
 his colyn Damian with his horse-  
 men whiche were aboute foure hun-  
 dred, to be ruled by theym. And  
 therefore Aldiger and Martine de-  
 partynge from Arimine, lede a  
 waye with theym all the horsemen  
 that Belisarius had deliuered unto  
 John at his settinge forth, lea-  
 uynge behynde theym none but the  
 footemen and those horsemen that  
 John

The wylful-  
 nesse of Iohn  
 Vitalian.

John and Damián had of their stone,  
 immediately hereupon this  
 came and besieged the Towne. At  
 his first commynge thither, he  
 framed a towre of lyke height w<sup>th</sup>  
 the walles, the whiche was not dra-  
 wien w<sup>th</sup> Dren as the other was be-  
 fore at Rome, but dyuen by soul-  
 dyers that were w<sup>th</sup>in the engyne.  
 The Gothes therfore sette the same  
 agaynst that parte of the wall, where  
 they myghte w<sup>th</sup> moste ease ap-  
 proche, entenbyng the nexte daye  
 to haue wonne the Towne by as-  
 saulte. But John the same myghte  
 went oute w<sup>th</sup> his souldiers, and  
 caused theym to cutte a broode and a  
 deepe Dyche on that syde cassyng vpp  
 all the earthe that came oute of it  
 on that browe of the Dyche that was  
 nexte the wall. And so one myghte  
 worke disappoynted the longe pre-  
 pensed labour of the enemye, cut-  
 tyng of all possibilitie of byngenge  
 the engyne to the wall.

the diligence  
 and industrie  
 of Iohn in pre-  
 uentyng the  
 purpose of his  
 enemies.

## Of the taking of the

port for all that while was minded  
to fill up the dyke, commaundynge all  
his armye to prepare Fagotts and  
Straw. wyth suche other baggage for  
the same purpose. And to the intent  
the towne shoulde not the night follo-  
wyng be set on fyre by the enemye, he  
determined to drawe it backe agayne  
to the Campe. As the Gothes were  
aboute it, John issued out with his  
souldiers, and set vpon them being  
busye about the worke. There was a  
great and cruel combate aboute the  
Turret, and manye of the Gothes  
were slayne. Howebeit, after longe  
feghtyng they drew it backe agayne  
oute of daunger, but wyth suche a  
slaughter and so greate losse of theyr  
best men of warre, that they were  
utterlye in despayre of wyngynge the  
towne by force, determining to sub-  
due it by famine.

**¶ The**

## § The iii. Chapter.

Belsharius sendeth Mundilas with a power to receiue Millaine . who in his waye at the Citye of Paule by a mischance loseth a noble man of hys companye called Fidelis. Millane and certayne other Cityes of Lombardye yelde vnto Mundilas . Vnto the Nephew of Virgis goeth into Lombardye agaynst the Imperiales. Belsharius receyueth dyuers townes in Italye by composition . Virgis sendeth a crewe of souldyers to Auxinum for the more strenghtenyng thereof , the which makinge a roade agaynst the inhabiteurs of Ancon, through the follye of Goorn Captayne thereof make a greater slaughter and put the towne in daunger of takinge.

**T**he very selfe same tyme, Be-  
lieving granted an ayde of soul-  
diers to the Ambassadors of  
spain that came before unto Rome.  
He appointed Spunthas one of his  
familiar friends a very stout and  
ballant

## Of the boate of the

baliant man to be chieftaine of the said  
armie. In the same band was also Fi-  
delis of Millaine whome we declared  
to haue bene Steward of the kynges  
house. All these being conueyed to  
Seane by shippe, went from thence to  
Millaine on foote. And to the intent  
they woulde not be hyndered of theyr  
passage ouer the Ruer, they carped Bots  
with them in Wagons, to ferrie ouer  
the ryuer withall. Marching therefore  
in this sort as I haue tolde, when they  
had passed ouer the ryuer, and  
were come to the Citie Tictum which  
is now called Daue, the Gothes  
issued out of the towne and set upon  
them. For by reason that towne had  
a strong castle in it, the Gothes had be-  
stowed manie and precious thynges  
in the same, and had manned it with  
a great garrison. The battaille was  
no sooner foughte, but that the Go-  
thes were druen into the Riuier.  
And so Gundiag passed with his  
armie ouer the bridge that was made  
by

by the town. In the same place was Fi-  
delis of Milaine slain. For he went into  
a certaine church to make his prayers,  
and the residue of his company being  
all gone, last of all he came out alone, &  
as he wold have taken his horseback,  
be ouerthwene. The whiche thing his  
snewpes that stood bypen the wall  
perceyving, rushed out vpon him  
and slew him, before that Dundilas  
and the souldyers wyte of it.

The death of  
Fidelis of Mil-  
laine.

The death of this man was great  
sorrowe bothe to the Captaine and to  
the souldyers. For he was a noble  
man in his countrey, and of much  
power, and such a one as with his pre-  
sence might greatly haue furthered  
the warre that was in hand. Dundil-  
las therefore and the residue of his com-  
pany keepinge on their journey to-  
warde Millaine, were receyued in  
to the Citie. Therevpon, Como,  
Bergome, Ponaria, with the residue

Millaine and  
other cities of  
Lumbardy be-  
come Imperial

of the Emperour, which was the reason  
why the Emperour sent an army  
of

## Of the death of the

of the cities in those dayes, following  
the example of Spillaine, of their own  
accorde receiued Spillaine and his  
souldiers. When this was knowne  
ledge of those things that had happen-  
ned aboute Spillaine, he sent Ursias  
his brother some with a great ar-  
my into those parts, to the intent he  
should bothe cause such to keepe theyr  
allegiance to the Gothes as had not yet  
reuelted, and also (if he could) recouer  
such as had already yielded.

Furthermoore, he wrote to Theod-  
debert the King of Fraunce (with  
whome not long before he had ente-  
red in league) beseyging him to minister  
ayde vnto Ursias. In this state of af-  
faires in this expectation were the mat-  
ters of the unwarlike Belisarius at such  
tyme as he began to waite tyme, set-  
ting out of Rome, marched with his  
armies towardes his enemyes. The  
Gothes that were left in garrison at  
Tudert and Cluse, hearing that Be-  
lisarius was making towardes theym



for as muche as they thought themselves ouer weake to encounter agaynst hym; forthwith sent messengers vnto hym and yelded vp theyr Townes by composition. While these thynges were in doinge, Vitigis sent another armie vnto Auximum. For he was vtterlye determined to reteyne and keepe still that Citie. With this armie he sent a newe deputye to haue the charge of the Towne and the men of warre, named Macinius. Who adioining his newe souldyers and the olde crewe together, purposed to attempt the taking of Aucon bys nexte neighbour citie, which was manned with a garryson of Belisarius. And thereupon he went with all his whole power agaynst the inhabitters of Aucon. That Towne in those dayes was walled onely on that syde, that stood vpon the hill, the lower places situated on the playne grounds

## Of the warre of the

albeit they were replenished with build-  
ings, yet were they not enclosed with  
any wall. Wherefoze at such time as  
the Gothes approached. Conon captain  
of the towne and souldyers of Aucon,  
fearing least the suburbs and the in-  
habiters thereof should be wasted and  
destroyed by thenemye, came downe  
from the upper part of the towne with  
all his whole crewe, and set hymselfe  
agaynste hys enemye. But in that  
case Conon was to farre ouermatched  
For he hauinge scarce a thousand soul-  
diers, encountered with his enemies  
beynge foure thousand. And there-  
foze he dyd quickely abyss hys foolyshe  
hardynesse. For beynge not able to  
stand agaynste so manye, he was at  
length vanquished, and beynge put  
to flyght losse the moste parts of hys  
men, and the Citie it selfe was with  
much a doe hardly saued from taking.  
For when the souldiers rettyed full  
flyght toward the towne, the townes-  
men so doubtlesse their enemyes  
should

The foole har-  
dinesse of  
Conon.

Should enter in amonge the souldyers,  
fearefully closed vpppe their gates. By  
meanes whereof there was a greate  
slaughter made of theym euen harde  
vnder the wall. And the Captayne  
Conon himselfe was dxiuen to so nar-  
rowe an erigent, that he had none  
other waye to saue hys lyfe, but to be  
drawen vpppe the wall by a lyne. The  
Gothes retynge vpppe skalyngge Lad-  
ders, endeuored to wyinne the  
Cytie. Other some settynge fyre on  
the houses that we spake of before,  
burnte vpppe all that was wythoute  
the walles.

¶ The.v. Chapter.

¶ Narses an Eunuche the Emperours Cham-  
berlaine commeth into Italy with a new  
power and meeteth with Belisarius about  
Aucon, where in consultinge what is to  
be done after diuers opinions of thorther  
captaynes Narses perswadeth to goe and  
rescow Iohn Vatalian besieged in arimine  
the whych Belisarius verye pollicitelye  
bringeth to passe. Through flatterie and

## Of the warre of the

euill instigation ryseth emulation and discord betwene Narses and Belisarius. Belisarius going with Narses to the sieg of Urbine is of him forsakē and yet through good fortune winneth the towne.

The cominge  
of Narses in-  
to Italy.

**N**O longe after that these thinges were done at Aucon, Narses came into Italye wpyth a newe hoste of men. Thys Narses was an Enuche, a man that stode muche in the Emperours fauour, and one that bare greate rule and auctoritie aboute hym, For no man myghte commaund in the Emperours court, but he onelye. Moreouer he was threasurer of the Emppye ( whych is the offyce of greatest honour and truste ) and one of hys priue counsell, by whome the Emperour was in manner altogether ruled. He broughte wpyth hym into Italye syue thousande souldyers. The notablest amonge whome, was Iuliane, Captayne of the Illirien souldyers, & another, Narses a Persian boync

borne. Also there were in his retinue  
 pp. of Therules of whom were cap-  
 taines Islande and Whanotheus. In  
 meane tyme Belisarius hearynge in  
 what daunger the men of Aucon stood  
 was come among the Picents: and so  
 was Parles in likwise. The captayns  
 and their armies met both together a-  
 bout the towne. Where as they were  
 consultinge concernynge the warre  
 that they had in hand, and were deui-  
 singe what was mosse requisite to be  
 done next of all out of hand, there ap-  
 peared many doubttes and daungers  
 in the matter. For yf they should go  
 and bessege Ariminum, John & those  
 that were besyged wpth hym in Ari-  
 mine should be left in apparant scoper  
 to die, inesppecially consydering that soode  
 fayled them. Againe yf they should go  
 to Arimine, they shoulde leaue be-  
 hynd them at Ariminum a great gar-  
 rison of the Gothes, to the p[re]iudice  
 of theyr armye and damage of the  
 countrey.

The meeting  
 of Belisarius  
 and Nar-  
 ses

## Of the warre of the

Opinions of  
tho officers a-  
gainst Iohn.

A friend is tri-  
ed at neede.

Thoration of  
Narses.

In geuing of their verdittes manye of  
theym that were chiefe officers of the  
campe spake much against the rash-  
nesse of Iohn, in that he had shutte by  
hymselfe in Arimine contraye to the  
commaundement of Belisarius, and  
that of a proud and couetous stomacke,  
he had runne bypon hys owne heade,  
without regard of hys Captayne or of  
hys charge. When Narses perceyued  
that, fearing least by y meanes Iohn  
should be abandoned whom he loued  
most entierly, he spake hys mynde to  
thys effect. My Masters (as he) when  
men consult as concernynge the pub-  
lyke vtilitie, in my opinion they ought  
to haue an especiall eye thereto, for it  
owne selfe, and not to hynder it eyther  
for malice or for loue. Certainly all o-  
ther thynges set a syde, when I waye  
with myselfe the thing wherof we doe  
cōsult, me thinks I spie this difference  
in the matter. If we delay the siege of  
Arimini, there is no let but that with  
in fewe dayes after we maye attempt  
the

the same when we lyfe. But yf we  
make anye tarpance in rescowng the  
souldiers that are at Arimine, we can  
not afterwarde helpe theym when we  
would. For ere many dayes to an end  
hunger wyl so pinch theym, that they  
shalbe compelled to yelde themselves  
to their enemies. And therefore what  
indifferent Judge doubteth, but that  
most spede oughte to be made thyther  
where tariance procureth unrecovera-  
ble daunger. But John (ye will saye)  
deserveth not to be succoured because  
he despised his captaynes commaunde-  
ment, and through his owne wilful-  
nesse cast himselfe into that daunger.  
Admitte that all these things are true  
as are reported of John. What then  
shall we for the hatred we beare to  
John, willfully suffer the destruction  
of so noble and worthy a Citie as Ari-  
mine is, and of the innocent souldiers  
besieged in the same? I beseech the  
noble and puissant Captaine Belisa-  
rius, yf John haue offended thee, wylt  
thou



## Of the warre of the

thou wreke his trespassse vpon thempe-  
 rour: who therby should lose both hys  
 towne and his souldiers, to the greate  
 preiudice of the publike weale: againe  
 what shall men thinke, or what shall  
 men say of vs and our armies if we sit  
 tinge still like a sort of colwarde and be-  
 holding it with open eyes, shall suffer  
 our companions in armes to perishe,  
 and our besyged Citie to be taken by  
 the enemye, in manner harde vnder  
 our noses: My opinion is therefore  
 that w<sup>th</sup>oute anye further protra-  
 cting of tyme, we lead our armies to  
 Arimin<sup>e</sup>, to succour our men that are  
 in daunger. And afterward (yf it shall  
 seme expedient) to besege \* Arimin<sup>e</sup> &  
 other of our enemies holds. To further  
 the opinion of Purses w<sup>ch</sup> at a very hand  
 time came letters frō John vnto Be-  
 lisarius, aduertising him y<sup>t</sup> the souldi-  
 ers constrained by famine, had fallen to  
 composition w<sup>th</sup> their enemies, to yelde  
 w<sup>th</sup>in seven daies, onles they were res-  
 cowed in the meane while. Wherevpon,  
the opini-

\* Now called  
 Ozimo,

the opinion of Parles was confirmed by the assent of all the whole counsel. When it was ones fullpe condiscended that succour shoulde be ministred vnto John w<sup>th</sup> all speede possible, Belisarius prouyded for the same in this wise, fyrst he commaunded Aratus to abyde in the same place where they then were, with a thousand horsemen wyllynge hym in anye wyse not to remoue from thence, nor by any meanes to attempte fortune for anye occasion, but onelye to defende his campe yf the enemye aduentured vpon hym. After that, he furnyshed his shippes and embarked his souldyers, commyttynge the charge of them to Herodian and Aliarius. But the rule of the whole flete he wold shuld be at the discretion of Eldiger, commaunding him forthw<sup>th</sup> to direct his course toward Arminie. Another part of his army he befoke to Martine, bidding him coast the shippes and kepe w<sup>th</sup> them as nyste as he could by the shore.

The pollicie prouyde of belisarius for the recoveryng of Arminie.

## Of the warre of the

And asone as they approached their enemies so that thei came win kenning then of set purpose to kindle manie fires in their Campe, to the entent to make the enemy beleue y they were a greater army then they were in dede. Whiles these kept by the sea coast, he himselfe went a contrary waye by the City Saluia. (The same was somtime a faire citie but it had bene destroyed and beaten downe to the grounde by the Gothes that came sytise into Italye vnder Alaricus, so that nothyng remained therof moze then the ruines.) Belisarius therfore passinge by this towne, marched by the mountaynes eschewynge the playner waye that leadeth to Arimine, by the fyldees of the Fauenses and Bisaurina. For seynge that his enemyes had a farre greater army aboute Arimine then he had, and that he had leste a stronge garrison of theym behynde at Aurimum, he thoughte it moze for his behoofe to vse wysedome and policie

Saluia.

pollicie agaynste the Gothes, then to  
 seight w<sup>th</sup> theym in open felde. Mar-  
 ching therefore the waye befoze men-  
 tioned, when he came vnto the hilles  
 that rse agaynste Ariminc, (as muste  
 nedes be lightly in so great an armpe)  
 he founde certaine of hs enemies ran-  
 ging abrode. The which beyng either  
 slayne oz elles taken prisoners, some  
 of them w<sup>th</sup> their faces soze mangled  
 he let goe agayne. Who returninge  
 to the Campe of the Gothes, brought  
 tidynge that Belisarius was at hand  
 w<sup>th</sup> his whole poluer, for the confir-  
 mation whereof they shewed their fa-  
 ces newlpe wounded. It was aboute  
 noone when this newes was brought  
 to the campe. And therupon proclama-  
 tion was made to harnesse, & that eue-  
 ry man shoulde fall in order of battell  
 vnder his antesygne. The Captaines  
 hauyng putte their men in araye, wat-  
 ted for the commynge of Belisarius,  
 lookyng continually toward the moun-  
 taines from whence he was reported  
 to

## Of the warre of the

to come . But Belisarius had aboute  
midday entamped himselfe in the most  
taynes, a good way of from Arimine,  
and came not downe to hys enemyes  
that day. By meanes whereof the Go-  
thes haupng stood gapping for them all  
day to no purpose, at length about the  
Sunne setting brake their aray and re-  
toured into their tentes . Howbeit,  
when night came, espying a great sorte  
of fiers on the sea coast, cleane contra-  
ry to that way that Belisarius was re-  
ported to come, ( they were the fiers  
that Partyne and hys armye made )  
they were in great feare all that night,  
in so muche that there was not anye of  
them that eyther tooke any slepe or put  
of hys harnesse . As soone as it was  
daye, when they beheld the nanie also  
ready decked and furnysht makinge  
sayle toward Arimine, for feare least  
they shoulde be entrapped by two  
hostes at ones, the one from the lande,  
the other from the water, they by and  
by brake vp theyr siege, and without  
any

The Gothes  
breake vp  
their lege be-  
fore Arimine.

# Gothes in Italy. 71.

any order fled to Rauenna. First of all arrived Ildiger with his flete at Arimine, and going on land spoiled the tentes of the Gothes. Anone after came Martine and Belisarius wyth theyr armyes. When Belisarius beheld John and his souldyers that had bene beseged, howe pale and leane they looked wyth hunger, turning him selfe to John as it were to taunte him for his rashnesse, he saide: ye are muche beholtyng to Ildiger, and worthy to thanke him for his paines. John answered proude and arrogantlye agayne, that there was no cause whye he shoulde thanke Ildiger or anye man elles saue onelye Parles. As who shoulde saye, he despyed to haue it knowen, that Belisarius woulde smallye haue regarded his deliuerance, yf Parles had not compelled hym. These wordes troubled Belisarius, and they were the beginninge of discorde.

Occasion of  
discord amog  
thimperialles.

For

## Of the warre of the

See what mis-  
chiefe flattery  
worketh.

For after that tyme, John standing  
in feare of Belisarius, cleaved vnto  
Parles. The residue also of his friends  
suzred by Parles with euill counsell  
against hym. Mouching that it was  
not for his honour being Treasurour  
of Thempyre, and one of the Empe-  
rours priuie counsell, to be led by the  
uise of Belisarius, specially seying that  
he him selfe, had an armie farre pas-  
sing thar armie of Belisarius, both in  
number and strength of souldyers, and  
also in pollicie of Captaines, and ther-  
fore he ought to seeke the glorie of the  
recovery of Italy from the Gothes, to  
hym self and not to Belisarius. These  
flatterynge persuasions set Parles in  
such a pryde, that he euer after en-  
camped by hym selfe, and would not fo-  
low Belisarius aduise in nothyng.  
But consulted by hym selfe as tou-  
chyng these warres and all other af-  
fayres that were in hande. Neuerthe-  
lesse they went bothe together to the  
siege of Urbine, but yet not in one  
campe



campe. For Belisarius laye on the east  
syde of the towne and Parles on the  
West. At suche tyme as Belisarius  
was purposed to haue assaulted the  
towne, and had prepared engines for  
the same, Parles laughyng hym to  
skorne for his labour, withyn a daye or  
twayne after he came thither byake by  
his siege and retourned with hys ar-  
mye to Arimine, leauyng Belisarius  
& his company in woyle case, then yf he  
had not come there at all. For the ene-  
mye perceiuinge parte of the armye to  
dislodge, beganne to take a stout cou-  
rage, smally regarding that part that  
remained still behynd. Neuerthelesse  
Belisarius beganne to rere vyppre ordi-  
nauce toward that gate of the towne  
where the ground was most leuell, &  
to geue the aduenture to wynde it by  
assault. Whyles he was putting these  
things in a readynesse by a meruelous  
good fortune it happened that the los-  
taine (the townesmen of Urbine ha-  
uing no mo but that one onely) dyed  
by

The good for-  
tune of Beli-  
sarius.

**O**f the warre of the  
bp of the owne accord. Wherthroughe  
it came to passe that the towne for feare  
was yelded, vppon condition that the  
Gothes and the Citizens of Urbine  
should become subiectes to the Empe-  
rour Iustinian, in as free and ample  
manner as other Italians that were  
Imperiall.

The. vi. Chapter.

**O**f the great dearth that was throughe  
all Italy, and how the Gothes belege Mil-  
laine and winne it through the discord of  
Belisarius and Narses. Whereof the Empe-  
rour beyng aduertised by Belisarius cal-  
leth Narses out of Italy. Wherupon Beli-  
sarius hauing absolute auctoritie agayne  
procedeth wyth the warres, and belegeth  
Auximum, the sytuation and strengthe  
whereof is here declared.

**W**hen Urbine was thus yelded vn-  
to hym for as much as it seemed  
not as yet expedient to attempte  
the siege of Auximum, Belisarius  
led his hoste against the Urbenetanes  
The

what difficult, because it stood vpon a  
 rocke so stepe on all sydes, that men  
 coulde not well come to assault it.

The onely hope was to wyne it by  
 fauin.

For Italy was as it were so  
 woone to the hard bones with continu-  
 all warre, and troden underfoote with  
 many armyes, that there was not one  
 citie in all the countrey, but it suffered

scarfitie and penurie: the which penu-  
 rie Arbenensis also being at length op-  
 pressed, came in subiection to Belisa-  
 rius.

Marcellus lying at Arsinine sent  
 John with an armie of men to wyne  
 Cesena.

At the which towne, as he  
 was scaling of the walles, he was re-  
 pulsed with manye woundes, and lost  
 a great sort of hys company.

In the  
 same assaulte was slayne Phanotheus  
 captayne of the Grekes.

Wherevpon  
 John desisting from Cesena, went to  
 Forum Corneli, the which was yel-

ded vnto hym by composition. The  
 same tyme Phundilas and those that

were

lk.j.

Great darth  
 through out  
 all Italy.

## Of the warre of the

were in him at Millaine, began to be  
 wrapped in great distress. For Teude-  
 bert the French kyng (as is before spe-  
 cified) being by Alitigis called vpon for  
 ayde by vertue of the leage that was  
 betwene them, had sent to Alraian ten  
 thousand Burgonians vpon confidence  
 of the which multitude he encamped  
 himself not far from Millain, suffering  
 neither corns nor any other kinde of su-  
 stenance to be conueyed thither. Puri-  
 dilas had of necessitie bene driven be-  
 fore to disperse his soldiers into Come,  
 Bergome, & Pouaria, so that he had  
 no great number of horsemen aboute  
 hym. Howe be it the hardest of the mat-  
 ter was not the defence of the citie,  
 for the Citizens of Millain wth one  
 accord knitte themselves togyther in  
 the defence thereof. But the feare  
 was leaste victualle should faile in so  
 populous a Cytie, yf so be it the bar-  
 barous Gothes shoulde be suffered to  
 continue longe in those borders. Belli-  
 rius therefore hauinge intelligence  
 thereof

Millane besieged by the  
 Gothes.

thereof, sent Martine & Willarius thither with a great power, so intent that Mundilas & they joyning together, might remove the Gothes farther off. When they came at the river Po, which is frō Millaine but one days journey, they durst not passe over for feare of their enemies, but lyncered many dayes in the same place, frustrating day by day the hope of Mundilas & them that were besieged w<sup>th</sup> him. For where as they made promise to have passed the river & come vnto Millaine, they performed no part thereof. Dayly both hope & sustenance failed those that were besieged. At y<sup>e</sup> last after long lyncering Martine & Willarius confessing the truth aduertised Belisarius y<sup>e</sup> they alone were not able to passe over y<sup>e</sup> river against so great a power of their enemies, onles they woulde wylfully runne in open danger of their liues. Wherefore if he thought it good, he should cause John & Iustine which were w<sup>th</sup> they, armies not farre frō Bononia

Of the winter of the  
to loyne withen Belisarius herupon  
immediatly wrote vnto John & Iustine  
commaundinge them to loyne with  
Martyne, and to make all the speede  
they coulde to relieue theyr fellows  
beinge besieged and in vtter perill of  
their lynes. They sent hym worde  
again that they woulde nothing do  
without the commaundement of Parces.  
Wherebypon Belisarius wrote again  
vnto Parces: Whoe albeit he gaue his  
consent that the armye shoulde go thy-  
ther, yett not withstanding, for as much  
as it was a thing done by Belisarius,  
he went about it verie slowly and ne-  
gligently as men are wont to do in o-  
ther mens businesses. By this mea-  
nes the matter was so longe delayed,  
that at last they were vtterly deceived.  
In the meane tyme Millaire was eu-  
ery daye soex afflicted then other, intol-  
lerable hungre welinge pyned them  
away, and the citie waiting betwene  
hope & feare, abode such miseries & an-  
guish as almost no men were able to a-  
bide

# Gothes in Italy. 75

bide again. At þ length being brought  
 to better extremitie Praxilas & his soul-  
 diers fell to composition to abandon by  
 the towne so they might escape with  
 their liues. After whole departure the  
 Gothes entereng into the citie, spared  
 neither yong nor old, For they slew in  
 every place not only such as were able  
 to beare armour, but also thold men &  
 yong boyes. The women were geuen  
 in seruitude to the Burgonions, & the  
 citie rased to the ground. Reparatus a  
 citizen of Roma, being taken in the  
 towne by the Gothes, was helmen in  
 smale gobbetts & throwen to dogges.  
 Thus was one of the gooddest & most  
 populous citie of all Italy (through  
 the discord of Narses & Belisarius) put  
 to better destructio. In this ruine & ouer  
 throw of þ citie, were slain of þ Mil-  
 lners about. rrr. M. When Belisarius  
 had tidings of it, he took great sorow  
 for the same, & wrote vnto the emperour  
 Iustinian, the beginning and proce-  
 ding of all the whole matter.

Millane is lost  
 through the  
 discorde of  
 Narses and  
 Belisarius.

A notable  
 crueltie.

almoſt

liſt.

Iuſti



78 Of the Warre of the

*Postea bellum  
inter duos  
in Italia  
factum fuit*  
Narses is cal-  
led out of  
Italy.

Justinian being certified of the treachery  
was much offended thereat, but yet su-  
ffered not any man to go. Only he cal-  
led hither Narses out of Italy, commit-  
ting the whole charge & authoritie of  
the warre vnto Belisarius. Whereupon  
Narses with part of his armie returned  
into Grece, & Belisarius with all the  
rest abode still in Italy. Who now be-  
ing no man to querthwart him in his  
determination concerning the warre.

*Justinian A  
miser*

Although that his chief care relied vpon  
Vigilis & Marcianus, yet he missed  
to take two townes into from the Go-  
thes, before he proceeded with his ar-  
mie against Vigilis & Marcianus. The  
townes that he desired were Autunum  
and Fesules: both of them very strong  
ly situate, & both of them thoroughly  
manned by the Gothische garrisons.  
For neither would he leaue at his  
backe Avarinus hauiing in it thre thou-  
sands of chosen souldiers, whiche were  
able to do much displeasure & hinder-  
rance to his aduenture, nor yet Fesules  
because

because that as long as **G**othes held  
that citie, he thought nothing shuld be  
in rest through **P**etronia. Whereupon he  
deuided his army into thre parts, of the  
which he toke one with him to besiege  
**A**riminum, another he sent by **J**ustinus  
& **C**yprian against **F**esules, & the third  
he becke to **M**artine & **J**ohn **M**ilian,  
commanding them to encampe about  
the river **P**o, & to detayne **V**lathas with  
his hoste as long as they could in those  
borders, to the intent they should not  
come to raise any of the siges among  
**A**thanas & **P**icenus. And when they were  
not able to kepe him still there, then to  
follow him in the taile. **M**artine & **J**ohn  
therfore setting forth into **L**umbardie  
in that part of the arripe that we spake  
of before, to winne the citie **D**ertone sit-  
uate by the river **P**o, and from thence  
did their endeavour to trouble **V**lathas &  
**G**othes. **C**yprian & **J**ustin in another  
armie going vnto **F**esules, albeit the  
besieging of that citie were very difficult  
for **G** nature & roughnes of the place,

## Of the warre of the

yet not withstanding they brought  
their campe as nere as they could, & be-  
sieged it from a higher ground, where  
the way lay more plain to the towne.  
Belisarius himself with the pug-  
nantest company of all, beset Auximum.  
Vitigis had placed in Auximum the  
best that he could pyke out among the  
Gothes, & was very circumspect in for-  
tifying of that towne. Coniecturing  
that which was most true, namely that  
Belisarius would neuer procede to the  
besieging of Agenna, unless he had  
first subdued Auximum. When Belle-  
sarius had well viewed the situation &  
nature of the place, he was past all  
hope of winning Auximum by force.  
For the citie standeth upon somewhat  
a high ground, & besides that there  
were within to defende it, a pugnant  
band of chosen men of warre, able to  
give battell even in thopen field. So  
he had none other hope, but only to  
tame them by famine, forasmuch as  
there was a great number enclosed w<sup>th</sup>

Belis. besie-  
geth Auximū.

in the citie. And therefore Belisarius  
 admitting assault, pitched his campe  
 round about the hill on every side man-  
 roily watching that nothing shoulde  
 be conueyed in to them. But lyke as  
 that large compasse of his campe was  
 good to prohibe the portage of things  
 in, so was it unprofitable against soe  
 daie invasions of the enemye. For they  
 that were win, might at their pleasure  
 make so daie assaults vpon what part  
 of the Campe they lysted out of the  
 towne aboue. And the souldoyes of Be-  
 lisarius lay so farre one from another,  
 that they coulde not readily helpe at  
 need. By this meanes it came to passe  
 that the enemye continually infested  
 the campe, and diuers skirmishes  
 there therevpon fought. Moreover,  
 there was a certain moyst ground not  
 farre from the citie, where there grew  
 muche grasse. This field was as it  
 were the place of theyr dayly exercisen.  
 When eyther the besiegers or the be-  
 sieged resorted thither for forage: and  
 somtyme

## Of the warre of the

some tyme they courages were so  
hyndeled on bothe sydes, that almoste  
all the wholle Campe ranne thither  
to feyght. In these encounters the  
Souldyers of Belisarius preyay-  
led in multitude, and the Carres by  
the situation of the place, bothe partes  
beyng equall in manhod and pro-  
wesse. The lyke conflicts were al-  
so at Fesules, for there were manye  
soudaine alarmes geuen, and belyng  
daylye sharpnes betwene the be-  
siegers and the besieged. And thus  
the besiegers had none other hope  
of atteynyng the veyle, then by  
keepynge the besieged from suffe-  
raunce, and famyshynge them for  
want of foode. For there was no hope  
to wynde so stronge Cities as those  
were by force. And therefore by  
lynge by standynge in places conue-  
nient about the towres, they cutte of  
all carrpages and conveyance of  
thynges in.

And thus the

## The vii Chapter.

Of towncs that were besieged by the Imperialles, how the French men comming into Italy after that they had put two armies to fight the one of the Gothes the other of the Imperialles bothe in one day, returned home agayne, and how Pesulca was yelded to the Imperialles.

While the warre was in this state and that Anagnin among the Picentes, & Pesulca among the Petrusians were narrowly besieged, there happened a straunge chance about the viij<sup>th</sup> of May. For the Frenchmen with their Capitaine Wholdebert, having passed over the Alpes, came in great number into Lombardy. The cause of their coming (as afterward was knowen) was this. Because that when they perceived how warre was made in Lombardy, they being a warlike people & in manner savage, were offended that such a countrey being  
they

the cause of the Lodaine comming of the frenchmen into Italy.

Of the warre of the  
their next neighbour, should fall as a  
reward to them if could get the upper  
hand, and that thei themselves sitting  
still lyke cowards the meane while,  
should accept to be their neigh-  
bours. Whom the fortune of victorie  
appoynted to them. This was the oc-  
casion why they passed the Alpes. The  
same tyme Atraias beyng often writte  
to by Alitigis, had passed the Ryuer  
Rhodanus was marching with his ar-  
my toward Rauenna. Martin and  
John likewise helpe sent thither by  
Belisarius, preventinge Atraias, had  
encamped themselves not farre from  
the same place, to the intent (if they  
could) to haue stopped him of his pas-  
sage. Their campe was distant fro the  
campe of Atraias about 300 myles. In  
the meane season, the Frenchmen sa-  
dantly came into those quarters. Atrai-  
as & the Gothes by reason of the league  
that was lately taken betwixte them,  
supposed they had come to their ayde,  
lyke as they had done before in the  
warres



warres about Gallaine. These french  
men y<sup>e</sup> passed ouer the Alpes at that  
time w<sup>th</sup> Theobert, were to the num  
ber of foure score thousand, wher of be  
ry seide were hollmen & those atten  
ded alwaies vpon the kings person, all  
the residues being footemen. Their ar  
mour was not in pikes no; in bowes,  
but to keuer their bodies w<sup>th</sup>, they bare  
a tergat & a skull, and to strike the ene  
mye wall, a sword & a byll. In the bat  
tell they vled mooste commonlye their  
billes, the which strake w<sup>th</sup> such force, y<sup>e</sup>  
neither head pece no; tergat was able  
to hold out the blow, but that they cut  
throughe, no; any man was of power  
able to withstand the violence of y<sup>e</sup> stripe.  
These therfore as frendes of the Go  
thes, being suffred to passe ouer the ry  
uer Ticinus at the brydge by Paue,  
did after ward much hurt & displeasure  
to thynhabiters of Paue, & of a savage  
cruelty slew the wyues and chyliden of  
the Gothes as they found them abrod  
in the country, anon after passing ouer

the number  
& armour of  
the frechinge

## Of the waite of the

The Gothes  
and the imperials  
toured  
both out of  
their campes  
by the french  
men.

So, when they approached nere Traias  
campe, whether it were of set purpose,  
or through rashenes, they sett a quare-  
ling & consequently a feighting w<sup>th</sup> the  
Gothes. The end of the fray was; that  
the Gothes being put to the worse for-  
soke their campe, & flying not far from  
the campe of our men, caused the soul-  
diers of Belisari<sup>9</sup> to wonder soze what  
thei shuld meane. For thei had hard no-  
thing of the conning of the French-  
men, & therfore thei thought verely  
Belisarius had bene come by some pri-  
uie & unknowen way, to destroy Trai-  
as. Herevppon arming themselves in  
battell, when they had gone a litle fore-  
ward, sodainly they met w<sup>th</sup> the french-  
men, & being not able to retyre with-  
out battell, were enforced to feight, in  
the which they were soone overcome, &  
forasmuche as they durst not repayre  
tot heir campe, they had none other  
way to saue themselves but by flight.  
The Frenchmen getting the upper  
hād both of y<sup>e</sup> Gothes & tharmy of Be-  
lisarius

Belisarius in one day, obtained the campe of them both also, & rested in them finding good store of victuals in eche of them. Marcellus fled to Rauenna, & the soldiers of Belisarius through the fields of the Placentines and Parmenses gate ouer the mountaine Appennine & went into Petruria. This sodain coming of the Frenchmen troubled both Vitigis & Belisarius. The thing that Belisarius feared most, was least the Frenchmen should come into Petruria & oppresse his army that besieged Fesules. For through the fields of the Placentines & Parmenses, it is but a shorte & a redy way into Petruria. But the Frenchmen whē they had taried a whyle about 100, & coulde fynde neyther wyne nor other necessaries (the countrey beyng left bare by meanes of the long continuance of the warre) so that they had nothyng to feede on but Beaf, nor nothyng to drynke but the water of the ryuer, within short space they fell into diuers diseases.

the Frenchmen retourned againe into Fraunce.

108 Of the Warre of the

Of the which so much as they dyed  
in great number, they determined to  
retire backe, and so they went home a-  
gaine into Fraunce, by very same way  
that they came oute over the Alpes.

This was the end of the Frenchmens  
voyage into Italy. The Gothes that  
were besieged in Fesules, being soze  
constrained by hunger, when they saw  
that rescow was often promised & yet  
none came, at length yelved by the  
towne to Justin and Ciprian by com-  
position. When they had received the  
towne & placed a garrison therein, they  
went w all the rest of their army unto  
Aurimum. For Vitigis had promised  
to come w all his whole power to raise  
the sege before Aurimum. And sozaf-  
much as Vitaias was then with hym,  
it was none other like but he would  
have done so in dede. By reason wher-  
of Bellisarius was compelled to gather  
all his power aboute him out of other  
places, so thentent that after hys long  
continued syege, he would not be sette  
beside

Fesules is yel-  
ded the Impe-  
rialles.

THE TOWNE  
OF FESULES  
WAS BESIEGED  
BY THE GOTHES  
AND TAKEN  
BY THE ROMANS

beside his purpose. But when this as-  
 ten promised succour came not, and yet  
 they still held their owne to shatter-  
 ment, Belisarius determined to com-  
 pell them to yelde by some extremitye  
 maugre theyr harts for the compassing  
 wherof he invented this policie. And

The .xiii. Chapter.

How after that Belisarius had corrupted  
 the water of a certayne well nere vnto  
 Ravenna the townesmen yelded them-  
 selves, and the towne vnto hym by com-  
 position. The besyginge of Raue-  
 na by Belisarius and of hyr wonderfull good  
 fortune, and his wife dealing there at such  
 tyme as the Frenche Ambassadors came  
 thither, in somuch that he caused the of-  
 fers of the Frenchemen to be rejected and  
 a Truce to be taken for further commu-  
 nication to be had wyth the Emperour  
 for a small peace and agreement. Duryng  
 the whyche Truce the storehouses and  
 garners of corne in Raueenna are sette on  
 fyre so man can tell how.

A. I. With

## Of the battell of the

**W**hen a storme cast of the walles  
of Aspinham, on the north side  
of the towne there was a well in  
a very freche spring the which Belisari-  
us purposed to take from them, by  
cause he perceived that the towne men  
had none other place to fetch water at  
but onely there. To bring this matter  
to effect he commaunded his armye to  
be in armour by the dauninge of the  
next day, and to geue an approach to the  
walles. The Gothes thinkinge they  
had prepared them to thassault, placed  
themselves orderly vppon the battell  
ments. Belisarius in the meane time  
sent five men conninge in such feats,  
with mattocks and axes, well pau-  
shed wth the bucklars and tergates of a  
great number that were sent wth them  
for their defence, to undermine the  
well and to cutte downe the timber  
work. Who as soon as they came there  
hvd get them vnder the shed that coue-  
red the well, & beinge saufe out of dan-  
ger from the walles, beganne to digge  
downe

bolome the Mason worke. But when  
 the Gothes perceiuinge that all their  
 endeuour was about heuinge downe  
 the well, they pssued out of the towne  
 and assailed theym verie sterlye. The  
 fraye was harde vnder the walles in a  
 place of aduantage and easye to the  
 Gothes cominge downe to the defence  
 of the well, but very vntoward and vñ  
 indifferent for the souldiers of Belisa-  
 rius to make assault in. In this confite  
 were many slaine, but most of Belisa-  
 rius souldiers, for the Gothes darting  
 firs aloft, myght easily endomage their  
 enemies. Howbeit Belisarius was e-  
 uer at hand callinge still vpon hys men  
 and encouraginge them w a loud voyce  
 and would not suffer theym to geue  
 backe, but euer put freshe men in the  
 places of suche as were wounded or  
 slaine. This encounter beinge begonne  
 by the sunne risinge, lasted vntill noone.  
 At the last his souldiers pearcinge stout-  
 ly vpon the Gothes, compelled theym  
 to recople into the towne. When they

An encoun-  
 ter about brea-  
 kinge downe  
 of a well.

In this were  
 slaine of Beli-  
 sarius souldiers

say hys  
 Frogg



## Of the warre of the

returned backe and called away those  
that were digging downe & well, sup-  
posinge that they had dispatched their  
worke. But they had done little or na-  
thing to the purpose in mining downe  
of the Mason worke. The cause therof  
was by reason that & well being made  
in old time, was wrought so close and  
so sure, that it had bene an easier mat-  
ter to cutte a piece out of a whole quar-  
rie then to haue dygged downe anye  
parte of the wall of it. When it was  
perceyued howe that all that they had  
done, and all theyfeygbtynge was  
but lost labour, Belisarius caused the  
reste of the water to be infected w<sup>th</sup>  
the Juice of venemous herbes, w<sup>th</sup>  
stynkinge Carions of dead cattell, and  
w<sup>th</sup> a kynde of stone called Ashest so  
longe untill he had utterlye marred  
it, that it was not to be occupied any  
more, so that the Gothes fyndynge  
scarcetye of water by the mystre of  
this well, had muche a doe to re-  
lovene theym selues w<sup>th</sup> that little  
and

## Gothes in Italy.

83

and corrupted water that they had in  
fithye puddles wythin the towne.

After thys Belisarius neuer soughte  
to disquiet theym anye moze, eyther  
by skermishing or by anye other mea-  
nes, but sette styll peaceablye to be-  
holde the ende of the matter. At  
length mention was made of yeldyng  
and the Gothes requested that they  
myghte departe to Rauenna wythe  
bagge and baggage. Belisarius hea-  
ryng the demaundes, was in  
doubte what he were beste to dooe.

For he thoughte, that to lette goe so  
manye good men of warre and therby  
to augment the strengthe of hys ene-  
mies yf were at Rauenna, shuld be no-  
thing to yf profite of yf weale publique:  
Again to sit spending of yf time in vaine  
about Aurimū, he thought perillous &  
preiudicial, inespacially seing it was re-  
ported yf yf frechme were cōming to the  
aid of yf Gothes. But most of al stoupe  
in contentiō w<sup>th</sup> him his own souldiers,  
who in recōpens of their miseries and

L.iii.

calamity.

## Of the warre of the

calamities endured at their longe continued siege, looked of dutie to haue the spoyle of the towne, and would not in anye wise suffer themselves to be defrauded therof by anye composition or agreement. Finally when on thone side the Gothes were soze pinched w<sup>th</sup> penurie and scarcetic of things necessarie, and on thother side Belisarius in manner forced by the importunitie of the tyme, at length throughe Belisarius greate trauell the matter was concluded, that the one halfe of all that was in the towne should be geuen to hys souldiers for theyr share, and the Gothes shoulde keepe the other halfe still, prouided that the Gothes whiche were wythin the towne of Auximum, shoulde serue Belisarius in hys warres, in lyke case and estate wyth other of hys souldyers. After thys sorte were thynges knytte vppon and the Towne surrendered accordyng to the composition. When Belisarius had thus gotten Auximum into

Auximum yel  
ded to Belisarius.

into his hande, he assembled all his  
power together, myndyng to procede  
agaynst Vitigis and Rauenna. As  
sone as he came thither, by and by  
he sent Maritus one of his captaines  
to parte of his armye to watche and  
keepe the bankes of the Ryuer Po,  
to the intent that nothyng should be  
conueyed into Rauenna that waye.

Belisarius go-  
eth to besege  
Rauenna.

For one of the mouthes of that ryuer  
falleth into the Sea not farre from  
Rauenna, from whence there is a  
certayne dyche cutte oute of the whole  
ground, wherin the ryuer is conueyed  
to the Towne. Belisarius therefore  
myndyng first & foremost to disappoint  
them of this commoditie, gaue Mari-  
mus charge to keepe the hythersyde of  
the Ryuer in that bande that he had  
deliuered vnto him. Vitigis also com-  
ing out of Dalmatia at the comman-  
dement of Belisarius, had committed  
vnto him the keeping of the further side  
in another band. There happened the  
same tyme a wonderfull chaunce, &

The wonder-  
full good for-  
tune of Beli-  
sarius.

## Of the warre of the

such a strang thing as hath not lightly bene heard of. For as a great number of shippes and galeyes were comming out of Fraunce laden w<sup>th</sup> coyne and victualles makinge sayle toward Rauenna, the River fell so lowe, that many of the ships stood styll for want of water to beare them. Wherby it came to passe y<sup>t</sup> they were all taken by the soldiers of Belisarius. This was y<sup>e</sup> first token of good lucke wherw<sup>th</sup> fortune beganne to further the procedynges of Belisarius. For it could not be remembered that euer any such thyng had happened befoze. By this meanes was all libertye of caryinge in and out by the ryuer Do cutte of from Rauenna. As for by sea nothing could be conuected in by reason that the enemies of y<sup>e</sup> Gothes were euery where lordes of the sea. Agayne on the land Belisarius w<sup>th</sup> his armye kept them so short, that he would not suffer oughte to be caryed that way. Whyle Rauenna was thus straightly besyged, there came Ambassa.

Ambassadours out of Fraunce to Vitigis, offering that the Frenchmen should come into Italy and raise the spege, and doubtlesse to sea Belisarius wth all hys armye, yf so be yt that the Gothes woulde be content to admytte them as coparteners of the Emperre. This stout bragge made by the french Ambassadours, yd set the hearers harts in a pyrd. For they promysed to bring fyue hundred thousand men of warre, whose comyng (if he were in hys ryghte wyttes) Belisarius woulde neuer abyde. For yf he dyd, they threathened to suetch hym and all hys compagne wth theyr holberdes. These hygge wordes yd partlye passe by Vitigis & hys Gothes in pyrde, & partly made them afraid. For if the Frenchmen came into Italy, it was not to be doubted that they shuld get the upper hand, but it was a difficult matter to be belenced, that they would keepe touche and play the good fellows in parting of the Emperre.

French Ambassadours to Vitigis. libb  
IV of the north  
argis

## Of the warre of the

Belisarius sent  
deth commis-  
sioners to Vi-  
tigis.

And therfore yf the Frenchmen shuld  
come they mistrusted least they would  
be as much to their confusion as to the  
confusion of their enemies. This doubt  
of theirs Belisarius helped to increase.  
For he beyng a sage Captayne and  
politique in all affayres, as sone as  
he knewe of the commynge of the  
Frenche Ambassadors, sent his com-  
missioners also to Rauenna, both to  
offer the Gothes peace and attone-  
ment wyth the Emperour, and al-  
so to wythdrawe theym from societie  
wyth the Frenchmen, by puttyng  
them in remembrance of their former  
unfaythefull dealinge. The Gothes  
when they had hearde the Frenche  
Ambassadors and Belisarius Com-  
missioners what coulde be alledged  
on bothe sides, takinge deliberation  
what was best to be done, after long  
debating of it on, preferred thattome-  
ment w<sup>th</sup> the Emperour. By thys mea-  
nes the French Ambassade was dis-  
missed wout the thing that they came



for, and often treaties were had in Belisarius concerning the same, and by uers commissioners and messengers went to and fro for conclusion thereof. Finallye this was the ende of the matters debated. What the determination of all controversies should be referred to the discretion of the Emperour Justinian. Hereupon Ambassadors were sent to hym and a Truce was taken betwene the besyegers and the beseged. In the meane while it fortuned that the common storehouses at Rauenna and all the corne in them was burned vp, & mischaunce broughte the Gothes in greate distresse, consyderinge theyr owne corne was burnt vp, and Belisarius woulde not suffer any more to be brought in, the whych (he sayde) he dyd vpon this consideration, to the entent the Gothes shoulde be agreable to more indifferent articles of attournment. Holwebeit Vitigis was in a merueylous mistrust, because it could not

Truce betwene the Gothes and the imperialls

The storehouses are set on fire.

be

38 Of the watte of the

be learned by what meanes the fyre  
came. Some thought they were set a  
fiere by lightning, other supposed it to be  
done by some malicious persons, & o-  
ther some mistrusted that Belisarius  
should be the doer of it. The Quene  
also was suspected for y<sup>e</sup> matter. Who  
forasmuch as she was forced to marry  
to Vitigis against her will, was ther-  
fore bent to beate hatred and malice  
towarde hym in her harte. This bur-  
ninge of the grayne dyd greatly trou-  
ble Vitigis and the Gothes, & brought  
them in maner to bitter dyspayre. For  
if the fyre came by lightninge, they  
might thinke that God and the hea-  
uens were agaynst theym. If it  
were done of a set purpose, they wold  
not whom they might traste. So were  
they lyke wythin a whyle to be quyte  
woutre coine, and withoute all hope of  
comming by any moze, because y<sup>e</sup> Beli-  
sarius after the burninge of the store-  
houses, looked moze straitlye to theym  
that none should be conueyed in.

The

The Dyners of the Gothes become impaill  
all. The Emperours sendeth hys Amba-  
sadors wyth articles of peace to Rauenna  
the which of the Gothes are well ly-  
ked and loyfully receyued. But Belisarius  
perceyuing that more aduantage is to  
be gotten otherwise wilnot subscribe. nor  
to them, by meanes whereof, riseth a sus-  
picion that Belisarius wyll make hymselfe  
Emperour, the which the Gothes beyng  
glad of, to further the same, proferre their  
submission and obedience vnto him, and  
he accepteth is promising to take his other  
at Rauenna for performauce of their de-  
mands wherupon he is receyued royally in  
to the town, & diminisheth the most part of  
the Gothish soldiers, through whose de-  
parture having made himself strong he vi-  
sibly refuseth to stirre as long as there  
remaineth iustinian liueth. The gothes in Rome  
create a new king who maketh profer of  
submission vpon like condition the which  
Belisarius viterly reiecteth, & causeth vi-  
gils prisoner to Constantinople with diuers of  
his noble men and all his Thesaurers.  
About this tyme many of the Gothes  
that inhabited the Alpes, sent word  
to Belisarius that they woulde yelde  
themselves vnto him.

The revol-  
ting of cer-  
taine Gothes.  
to Belisarius.

There

## Of the Mounts of the

There are vpon the Alpes many castles, the which in old tyme were kept by the Gothes placed there to dwell. For the Alpes do diuider Italy from France, rising of a wonderful hight very hard to clymb vnto or to passe ouer, the which passages it was expedient to be well kept. And therefore Theodorich kyng of the Gothes dyd both place a plentiful company of his countrey men with their wyues and chyliden in those wast groundes, and also beyled them castles & holdes. Sifgis one of y<sup>e</sup> Gothic nobilitie, who had certain Castles in the Alpes, was the first of all that of his fre wyll receyued the souldyers sent into those coasts by Belisarius, perswading other Castles to do the lyke. The same tyme Arianas was in Lumbardy, musteryng of souldyers to carie wyth hym to Auerina. He had already raised an army of foure thousand men. Of the which the most part were inhabitants of the Alpes. Who hearing that Sifgis was to

vnto their enemies, & that the Ca-  
 stles wherein they had their wyues &  
 children were assailed, they compelled  
 Uralas first & foremost to lead them thi-  
 ther. Whereupon he took his tour-  
 ney w<sup>th</sup> al the power that he had raised,  
 into Chalpes, and there besieged El-  
 sigis and the foulowers of Belisarius.  
 When newes of this were came to  
 John Uitalian and Martine, who the  
 same tyme had theyr campe in Lumb-  
 ardye, they also without further tair-  
 ance marched toward Chalpes, & took  
 certain Castles in theyr waye. In the  
 same were taken many of the wyues  
 and children of them that serued un-  
 der Uralas. When the fathers, hus-  
 bands, & kinfolke of them had know-  
 ledge thereof, they forsooke Uralas  
 campe & fled to theyr enemies, to the  
 intent to recouer them againe.  
 Uralas being thus forsaken of his  
 owne foulowers, retourned with a few  
 into Lumbardye, & neuer set his minde  
 any more eether about musteringe of  
 other

The answer  
 of the Empe-  
 ror to the  
 demands of  
 the Gothes.

## Of the waite of the

other soldiers, or succourings such as  
were besieged. So Vitigis & the Go-  
thes that were at Ravenna, being for-  
saken of their owne people & destitute  
of all hope of comforte, were still besei-  
ged and suffered euery day more dis-  
tresse then other. Whyle the Gothes  
stood in this estate, thambassadors  
returned fro the Emperour, Dominicus  
& Marcellus both of the Senate. They  
brought Iulianus answere to those  
demands that Vitigis & the Gothes  
had made as concerning the concord &  
agreement. The summe of the Empe-  
rours decree was this. That Vitigis  
should hold still all that he had beyond  
the ryuer Po, & surrender all that he  
had on the syde. That he should deli-  
uer to the Emperour thone half of his  
treasure, & kepe the other half for him-  
selfe & that all the Gothes inhabityng  
on the hyther syde of the Ryuer Po,  
should become subiectes to the empyre  
of Rome. When the Ambassadors  
had first conferred w<sup>th</sup> Belisarius, they  
ente-

The answere  
of the Empe-  
rour to the  
demands of  
the Gothes.

entered into Macedonia and declared  
 their commission; the which things  
 both Vitigis and the noble men of the  
 Gothes were glad to here; and consen-  
 ted thereto with all their hartes. But A crafty & sur-  
 Belisarius was very soze to see it. For ell kynde of  
 it spied him to the hart; that when he dealing.  
 might fully haue had the victorie of the  
 Gothes, it shoulde be taken out of his  
 hand. And therefore anon after when  
 the commissioners returned, and re-  
 quested him to subscribe the articles he  
 would not put to his hand. The which  
 thing brought the Gothes in a wro-  
 uelous maye; fearing to be deceived  
 under a counterfet pretense of peace.  
 In so muche that they beganne to saye  
 openly, they woulde put nothing as  
 concerning the peace, without the  
 consent of Belisarius. The Ambassa-  
 dors themselves and suche as were  
 chiefe officers in the Campe were  
 greatly displeased with Belisarius do-  
 ing; and thought he behaved well in  
 disobeying the emperours commaund-  
 ments.



And thereupon bred a suspicion, as  
 though Belisarius went aboute to  
 make him self emperor, & tooke it the-  
 ly minded to robbe his obediens frō  
 Justinian. This suspicion was almost  
 in every mans head at that time with  
 the which opiniō the Gothes being in-  
 duced, sent princely unto him, exhorting  
 him to take y<sup>e</sup> west Emperre upon him  
 himselfe, and not to acquire it to ano-  
 ther. For if he would so do, they sayde  
 that the Gothes woulde be contented  
 to become his subiectes, & to obey him  
 with all theyr hearts; & that he shoulde  
 joyntly enioy the kingdome of the Ita-  
 lians & the Gothes, together w<sup>th</sup> an in-  
 comparable puissance. These thinges  
 were brought princely by the Gothische  
 nobilitie. Vitigis perceyvinge that  
 suche proffers were made, sent his mes-  
 sengers also unto Belisarius, raving  
 hym into the same: Belisarius  
 pondering these thinges with hym-  
 selfe, and considering they myght be  
 greaved for hym behoofe, yf they were  
 handled

handed wisely, sent away into sundry places with their bandes, John, Titilian, Bassas, & Aratus, men of much authoritie in his campe, but in no wise his friends, pretending an excuse as though so greates armyes coulde not well be victualled together in one place, and that they shoulde finde more plentie & abundaunce of victuall and forage in other places.

This excuse was pretended, but in dedde they were sent away to the intent that with their presence they shoulde not interrupt him of his doings. Afterwardes he him selfe summoning befoze him all the officers of his camp, when he had sufficiently debated with them as concerning the distresse that the Gothes were brought vnto, what woulde you saye (quod he) yf we shoulde by this warre attayne at theyr bandes, not onely those things where with the Emperour seemeth to be contented, but also greater things.

¶ Every

20  
Of the words of the  
Gothy man for hymselfe commended  
that greater things shoulde be attay-  
ned if it might be. When he had them  
saye so, withoute further disclosing  
of the matter, he dismissed the counsell.  
And thereoppon he sent one of his com-  
pany to Rauenna, aduertising the Go-  
thes that he was contented to do as they  
had counselled hym, exhorting them to  
make speede in the matter. The Go-  
thes as they y were already oppressed  
with famine, without any delay sent  
they commissioners fully authorized  
by the prince and the common consent  
of them all vnto Belisarius. These  
persons when they came into the camp  
spake nothing before the soldiers,  
but talkyng with Belisarius alone,  
tolde hym that they were come to re-  
ceyue his saythfull promise and othe  
for tharcomplishment of the matter  
before debated. There were thus many  
of promises propounded by them, wher-  
vnto they required hym to be true.  
Whome was that he shoulde gouerne  
them

them with iustice and equitie, maine  
tenne and supporte the customes and  
lawes of the Gothes, and not be offen-  
ded against any of them for ought that  
had bene done in tymes past, with di-  
uers other things of lyke purport.

The other was that he shoulde from  
hence forth proclaime himselfe king of  
Italy & of the Gothes. If he woulde a-  
gre to these articles & be sworne to the  
performance of them, they woulde set  
open their gates & receyue hym & all  
his armie into Rauenna. Belisarius  
swore to all thother demaunders accor-  
ding as the commissioners had requere-  
d, but concernynge the takynge of  
the kingdome vppon him, he sayde he  
woulde take hys othe before Vitigis &  
his noble men when he was come to  
Rauenna. The commissioners mistru-  
sting not but that he woulde haue bene  
king in dede, delayed the takynge of  
his othe in that behalfe, as though he  
shoulde haue performed the same be-  
fore the noble men immediatly vppon

## Of the waite of the

the cause why  
Belisa, wouldc  
not take vpon  
him to be em  
perour.

The yelding  
of Rauenna  
to Belisarius.

his coming to Rauenna. But Belisarius purposed nothing lesse. For Julian when he made him Elected name generall of the warres, had bounde him with a great othe, that he shouldc not take vpon him no blame the kingdome of Emperre, as long as he were aloue, no: yet suffer himself to be accounted or called by the name of tyrant, king or Emperour. This his othe he was determined to keepe vniuolated, & did but daly wth the Gothes in that behalfe. Vpon this composition the Gothes verie desirously called Belisarius into the towne.

And he with hys armye in royall order, and wth hys hyppes trynly decorated, bryngyng in them abundaunce of all kynde of viualles, entered into Rauenna to the great reioyement of the Gothes and theyr armye. Nowe because there were a great number of men of warre of the Gothes wthin the towne, Belisarius myndyng to abate theyr power, wthin a few daies  
after

after hys coming thither, licensed all  
such to departe home, as dwelled on  
thys side the cyuet 100. They beyng  
wearyed wth theyr longe continued  
warfare, were verie willing to re-  
tourne home to their frendes. And so  
the multitude that was at Rauenna  
being diminished, the armye of Beli-  
sarius waered the stronger, and were  
euen as Lordes of the towne. As thin-  
ges fell oute in this wyse the nobilitie  
of the Gothes that dwelled in anye  
part of all Italy, eyther came them sel-  
ues, or elles sent their commissioners  
vnto Belisarius to Rauenna.

But when Belisarius beganne to  
make delayes in the takynge vppon  
hym of the kingdome, men beganne  
to maruell what he shoulde meane,  
and also to cast doubt of hys doynges.  
The whyche suspition was augmen-  
ted vppon the sodayne sendynge of  
Iustinian vnto Belisarius commaun-  
dyng hym to retourne home.

Belisarius is  
sent for out of  
Italy.

20 Of the warre of the

For the same went & certain had made report to the Emperour, that Belisarius went about to make himself king of Italy, & had already taken it vpon him. For feare wherof Iustinian sent for him immediately out of Italy. The Gothes perceyuing that, coulde not at the first by any meanes persuaade them selves, that he would returne to them, perour Iustinian. But when they saw preparacion made for the same, and all thynges put in a readinesse toward his iourney, then they knewe well ynoughe that Belisarius had wonne them in by a trayne and had utterly de ceined them. But what remedy? For he had both the towne and their noble men in his hand, so that they could not so much as bewayle their misfortune one to another, but that he must needs be payne to it. When the Gothes that dwelt on the further syde of Ido, heard tydings hereof, they assembled themselves together at Dauye, and there bewayling one to another the commo misfor-



misfortune of their nation, and the de-  
ceitfullnesse of Belisarius, at length  
would haue made Vraias theyr kyng.  
The whych thing he would not in any  
wyse suffer them to doe, excusing him  
selfe by thys reason, that for as much  
as he was Vitigis brothers sonne, he  
myght not seme to haue done eyther  
lyke a kynsman or lyke an honest man  
yf he shuld take þe kyngdome vpon him  
whiles Vitigis were alijue. Through  
thys allowable excuse alledged for  
hymselfe, he was the occasion that Al-  
donade a man of great authoritie and  
power amonge the Gothes, and which  
had bene ruler of Vieron a longe tyme  
before, was created kyng. Aldonade  
therefore beyng sent so oute of Vieron  
vnto Banue, was there invested  
in hys purple Robes of estate, and pro-  
claymed kyng of the Gothes, to the  
entent he shoulde studye and take care  
for the saufgard of hys countrey men.  
Beyng in thys sorte made kyng, he  
sent ambassadours by & by to Rauen

Vraias refu-  
seth to be  
made kyng of  
the Gothes.

Aldonade is  
made king of  
the Gothes.

## Of the warre of the

The effect of  
the ambassade  
sent by Ildo-  
uade to Beli-  
sarius.

unto Belisarius; geuing them charge  
to put hym in remembrance of hys  
promyse lately made for the taking vp-  
on him of the Kingdome of Italy & of  
the Gothes, nor letting to reprove him  
openly of breakinge his faithfull pro-  
mise; through whiche cautel the Go-  
thes were deceyued. Wherefore if he  
would yet accomplishe his promise in  
proclaiming him selfe kyng, and shewe  
the same in his doings; Ildouade offe-  
red him selfe to come to Rauenna, & to  
laye of hys robes of estate at hys feete.  
But yf he had rather be the Emperours  
slawe then to be Emperour himself, he  
oughte not to be discontented though  
Ildouade & the Gothes that remayned  
endeuoured to prouide for the sauf-  
gard of theyr weale publique. Whys  
was the summe of theyr ambassade.

An example  
of a faithfull  
subiect and of  
an inuincible  
mynde.

Belisarius answered openly thereon-  
to, that as long as the Emperour Ju-  
stinian lyued; he would neuer take vp-  
pon him to be kyng. Wyth thys an-  
swere the Ambassadors retourned

to

## Gothes in Italy.

94

to Ildouade vnto Dauid. And Bel-  
sarius hauinge berked by Dauid,  
sayled towarde Constantinople wyth  
Vitigis and dyuers other noble men  
of the Gothes, and all the kynges  
Treasurc, the fyfth yere after  
the warre was begonne

in Italy.

(\*)

The

# The thyrd booke

of Benard Breteigne, concernyng the warres in Italy  
against the Gothes.

## The first Chapter.

The entertainement that Belisarius and his prisoners had at Constantinople. A commendation of Belisarius good gouernement, by comparison betwene hym and the Captaynes that succeded hym.



When Belisarius was come to Constantinople, the Emperour Iustinian welcomed hym with great ioy, and hauing hym in great re-  
putation and honour, put out of mynde all mistrust that he had conceyued of his doings before. The Gothes whom he had brought with him were entertained very gently and courteously, and men wondered to beholde them: the whych mighte seme to haue chaunced  
not

not without good cause. For there was  
 Vitigis king of the Gothes that of late  
 had besieged Rome with such a mul-  
 titude, and his wife Amululuentha,  
 the niece of Theoderich son-in-law king  
 of the Gothes who first brought them  
 into Italy, and there gave them posses-  
 sions. Furthermore there were the two  
 sons of Alouade then laynge of the  
 Gothes, whom Belisarius finding in  
 the Courte of Vitigis at Ravenna,  
 would not suffer to depart, but brought  
 them away with him into Greece. There  
 were other noble men of the Gothes  
 also, whom all men beheld, wondering  
 at the puffs of Belisarius, that had  
 achieved so great employes, and extol-  
 ling him with praises to the skye, in  
 that he had lately before subdued Aph-  
 rycke, and now Italy, under the domi-  
 nion of Iustinian. And thus went the  
 world in Greece. In Italy after the  
 departure of Belisarius, the order  
 of thynges by the commaundement of  
 the Emperour was committed to the  
 discretion

What they  
 were whome  
 Belisarius  
 brought pri-  
 soners to Con-  
 stantinople.

By the way  
 committed to

Of the warre of the

discretion of John, of Bellas, & of Ill-  
talis. Constantian also was come out  
of Dalmatia, & was added to the number  
of the Governours. It was some time  
what difference there was betwene  
the government of these men & of Belisa.  
For (to omitte his skillfulnesse in feats  
of warre & cheualrie wherein he far sur-  
mounted all the Captaines of his time)  
there was in him a singular humani-  
tie & gentleness, through the which he  
erhibited himself as well to the poore, as  
to the rich. There was no manner of per-  
son, but might haue ealie & free acceſſe  
to his presence: & besides that, he was  
wonderous bountifull & liberall. Un-  
to his souldiers that had lost their bo-  
des, weapons and armour (so it were  
not cowardly) forthwith he gaue new  
agayne. Of the husbandmen he had  
so great regarde, that in leading of his  
armie, he would not suffer any of them  
to be hurte or endamaged. His sould-  
iers durste not be so bolde as to touche  
the Apples hanging on the trees.

The prayſe  
of belisarius.

Through

Through this his straightnesse in ob-  
serving the lawes of armes, he obtey-  
ned that his campe was more plenty-  
fully serued, then the marketts in any  
cittie. So free and without peryll was  
the conueyance of all things that were  
to be solde. His vprightnesse toward  
suche Cyties, as were in societie and  
leage wpth hym, no man is able to  
reporre as it deserved. Men myghte  
heare of the great good tounes that  
he dyd for them, but not that he hurt  
or molested any of them.

But as for them that succeeded hym,  
they were nothinge lyke hym, ney-  
ther in humanitie, neyther in pro-  
fesse, neyther yet in vpright dea-  
lynge. For bothe they them selues  
were pyllets and pilkers, and also  
they suffered theyr subdyners to fall  
into all kynde of licentiousnesse & disor-  
der, beinge pood to the pactakers,  
and easie ynough to be entreated to  
ward their enemies, by meanes wher-  
of within short space matters began to



22 Of the death of the

gob cleane backe towarde, and to speeche  
to open and manifeste truste, as I shall  
shew you hereafter.

The ii. Chapter

The diligence of Ildouade, King of the  
Gothes, the greates misgouernauces of the  
Imperiall Capitaines, by meanes whereof  
they be broughte to love and the Gothes in-  
creased in strength and courage. The death  
of Vrais, the death of Ildouade, the elec-  
tion and death of Atreus, and the elec-  
tion of Tolly.

Ildouade, beinge nobly created  
King of the Gothes (as I decia-  
red before) after the departure of  
Melisarius, went in hand with his  
matters very diligently. For he gaue  
commandement that all the Gothes  
and all the Italians that followed the  
Gothe the parts, should at a place ap-  
pointed meete all together readye  
fornished with armour at hande. His  
armie at the beginninge was verie fewe,  
but it continuallye increased euerie  
daye

saye was in better hope and comforte  
than ever. The covetousnesse and  
longest dealing of their aduersaries  
did not a little helpe the Gothish part.  
For the collectors of Yulman under  
the colour of forseyntures and arrears  
began to bere the people of Italy  
innumerable bytchylle, and to compell  
them to the payment of summes that  
were neuer due. For by calling an ac-  
count of all the ages that the Italians  
had taken charge of in the tyme of  
Theoderich kyng of the Gothes,  
or of anye other of the kynges  
that succeeded hym, together with the  
accounts of all such offices as anye  
Italian had boyle duringe the sayde  
tyme, and moreover by making in-  
quisition for the money lately promy-  
sed by the Cypres to the Gothes, the  
whiche they chalenged to the Empe-  
roure as due by the name of forseynture,  
they broughte euery man pauerlye  
and all the Cypres generalye in such  
distresse, that they wished by Gothes  
should.

The inurol-  
ous dealing  
of the Empe-  
perours Col-  
lectours cau-  
seth great al-  
teration.

to be loydes of all agayne & therfore  
many of their owne freewill, resorted  
to Albonade, helpinge to augment the  
number & strength of his partie. The  
like grudge was also in the Emperours  
armie. For like with what greedines  
the money that was neuer due was  
fracted of the Italians, with like pin-  
ching were the souldiers restrayned of  
their due deserved wages. There  
was no regarde had of any thing but  
greed, which was to satysfy the Empe-  
rours insatiable covetousnes, in gar-  
thering of money and spendinge none  
agayne. And therefore as well the sould-  
yers as the Italians, beinge constrain-  
ed with so great wronges, sought to  
bryng the Emperie to decaye. By mea-  
nes whereof Albonade daylye growe  
page stronge. brought under his ob-  
beylance all the Cyties beyonde the  
Ishuer Do, and all the Cyties per-  
teynynge to the estate of Venyce, and  
his armie was fullye furnisshed with  
munition both of Italians and of others.  
Through

## Enough

63

1A.

Through the whyle within a whyle  
 he was so encouraged, that he was  
 not a scape to leade his army into  
 openfeld, & to try the fortune of battel.  
 This encounter was fought not farre  
 from a Mountaine against Vitalis one  
 of the Emperours Captaines. In the  
 which bloodie getting the upper hand  
 made such a slaughter of Vitalis army  
 & whyles the captaine himself was re-  
 sed away, all the rest were either slain  
 or taken prisoners by the Gothes.  
 Through this victory being so great &  
 so notable, it is a wonder to see how the  
 gothes were encouraged, & how much  
 the power of their aduersaries was a-  
 bated. In so much & not only beyonde  
 the River Po, and vnder the domina-  
 ion of Venice, but also all such as  
 on this syde the Po, helde of the Go-  
 thes part, were thoroughly strengthe-  
 ned w<sup>th</sup> the name of Ildouade grewe  
 famous euen in the Emperours Ju-  
 stinians Court, and amonge forreine  
 nations also.

A battell be-  
 twene ildou-  
 nade and the  
 imperiales.  
 \* Now called  
 Trenizo.

It was not long after but that he put  
 to death Yraias a man of much  
 authoritie and estimation among the  
 Gothes byon presumption y he should  
 conspire with his enemies. This cause  
 was pretended. But what some were  
 of opinion that he took pytye agaynst  
 Yraias because that lately before there  
 had bene alteration betwix his wife  
 and the Quene. But surely I cannot  
 thinke that Alouade being a grave &  
 wyse man would be so farre offenso-  
 as to be induced with byablings mat-  
 ters of women, to kill such a man as  
 was Yraias. I beleue rather that the  
 cause why Alouade byd putte him to  
 death, was that he feared his power &  
 authoritie. For it is manifest that the  
 Gothes in generall are of nature very  
 mistrustfull, and scarce sufficientlpe  
 faithfull to ward their kinges. Many of  
 the Gothes disallowed the death of Y-  
 raias, and openly detested it as a he-  
 nous and wicked acte. By meanes  
 wherof it came to passe, that Alouade  
 him.

and named A  
 The death of  
 Yraias. which  
 was the first  
 of his kind  
 in the world  
 of men.

himself was slayne by one of his owne  
gard whiles he sate at his meate. In  
his stead was Ataricus created king:  
but he reigned not long. For within five  
monethes after his election, he was  
slain by his owne subiectes for his evil  
behaviour & misgouernement. Thus  
having killed two of their kinges within  
two yeres space, they offered the king-  
dome with one consent vnto Totilas.  
This man before he was made kynge  
had borne great authoritty at \* Larui  
finer, which is a citie of the Venetians  
and his father was brother to Aldo-  
made late kynge.

The death of  
Ildouade.

The death of  
Ataricus.

Totilas crea-  
ted king.

\* Now called  
Treuizo.

**The.iii. Chapter.**

A larger declaration of the election and  
creation of Totilas mentioned briefely  
in the Chapter before. The Emperours  
Captaines through their insatiabie gredi-  
ces of pray stryuing for the bootie before  
they had gotten it lose the Citie Veron  
whiche was deliuered into their handes,  
and betray their owne companie.

## Of the waite of the

**A**fter that Albonade (as I shewed before) was slaine, Totilas expecting to be in daunger because he was so nere of his kinne, sent priuely to Rauenna & made compaign with the perours capitaines to turne vnto them with such as he had rule of & to yeld vp the towne of Tarnisium into their hands. A day was limited for performing of this matter, But ere every day came, the Gothes repenting that they had reioyced in the death of Albonade, & that they had made Ataricus their king, a man neither of wisdome nor courage able to defend the Gothes against so great strength of their enemies, began to encline to Totilas the nere kinsman of Albonade, & so wishe that he were their king. In conclusion they dispatched Ataricus out of the way, & made Totilas king in dede. Iustinian hauing intelligence of these things that had happened in Italy, found great fault to thinskillfulnes & cowardnes of his capitaines, & in al the tyme that their enemies were so at dissention among



among themselves, & among so many alterations & chaunges, they hauing so great opportunity for speeding of their matters, had done nothing at al. The captaines moued w<sup>th</sup> this dishonorable rebuke, asbled together at Raugraus. Wherupon when it came to consultation as concerning the war, it was thought best, first & foremost to send an army against the citie Meron: For they had been secretly put in hope of thobtaineing of y<sup>e</sup> towne. The captaines were in number six of wh<sup>o</sup> the chiefe were Constantian & Alexander lately sent thither by the emperor for the collection of his money. Therefore setting forth w<sup>th</sup> a greate army, when they approached nere to Meron, they determined to putte in tryall the hope that was lately geuen them. For there was one Martine a noble man of that Countrie that had a Castle not farre from Meron: wh<sup>o</sup> (so far as much as in his hart he was impartiall) had allured the keeper of one of the gates to let in the emperours army.

101 Of the Boate of the

The matter being in this wyse closely agreed upon, when the capitaines came thither with their armys, they sent before one Artanades an Armentian with a number of pyked souldiers to take the gate, & there to waite the coming of the rest of the hoste. No parte of the myle was lefte vnderformed in that place. For in the dead of the night when the souldiers came to the gate, the traitour set it wyse all open & let them in to the Cytie. When enterpryse in and hauyng also taken the walles aboute the same, gaue noyce thereof to the rest of the armys. The Gothes perceiving their entrie within the towne, fled out at another gate. The capitaine hearing that their men had taken the towne, marched forwards. But ere ever they came there, they fell at aduersation for the spoyle by the way, & staid fife miles from the Cytie. In the meane while the daye brake. Now there is a castle aboute the citie of Cleron which hath a very great prospect, both into the towne

Note the con-  
nectiousnes of  
the imperialles  
and what  
came of it.

Some, & also came into the countrye.  
The Common people were fled into this  
hold, possessing few of their enemies  
to be within the Citie, and the armye  
to abyde still without makinge no ap-  
proch toward the walles, sodainely p-  
sued out of the Castele, & aduenturyng  
through the citie, recovered to the gate  
where their enemies came in & shut it.  
The souldyers that were entered by  
night, were partly oppressed, & partly  
flying to the walles made resistens frō  
aboue. Anone after, the captaines com-  
ming toether & finding the gate shut.  
although 8 souldiers toln called to the  
to, help, desiring them not to abandon  
them in that sorte, yet notwithstanding  
they retired backe againe out of hand.  
Some of the souldiers leaped downe  
the walles & lined themselves among  
which number was Artanades the Ar-  
menian their guide. The rest were ey-  
ther slaine or els taken prisoners. By  
this meanes through the misgouern-  
ment & couetousnes of the Captaines

winning amongst themselves for the  
prize before they had gotten it. When  
they should have made most speed in the  
winning of the same the matter was  
led about. **Theron** and his men were  
of the opinion that they should not  
pursue the enemy.

**The iii. Chapter**

**Totilas** by his policie overcometh the  
Imperials being of greater force and num  
ber then his army was, in the which victo  
ry he sheweth great glory.

**A**fter this the Captaynes of **Iustinian**  
for because their attempt fell  
out so ill favouredly and dishonourable  
**Theron** began to fall and debate among  
themyselfes, euery man putting the  
fault in other. & thereupon departing  
out of those quarters, they passed ouer  
the river **Do**, & marched toward **Plea  
lane**. At that time was **Totilas** at **Pa  
uy** who hearing of the coming of his  
enemies raised as many men of warre  
as he could with all speed possible. In  
the meane tyme the captaynes hauing  
passed

passed beyond Plemons, had encamped  
 themselves by the side of the river Po.  
 Totilas albeit he were far overmat-  
 tered, yet he determined to goe against  
 them to such power as he had and to  
 trie the adventure of battell. So when  
 both the camps approached nere toge-  
 ther, & that the encounter was fully re-  
 solved vpon by both parties, Totilas  
 in the nyghte tyme sent certayne of  
 his horsemen before, commaunding  
 them to gette ouer the Ryuer almost  
 twenty furlonges aboue the campe of  
 their enemies, & as soone as the bat-  
 tle was loyned, to retyre and assaile  
 the enemye behynde wythe as muche  
 noyse and hurlyburlye as they could.  
 He himselfe (when he sawe his tyme)  
 marched towarde his enemyes. The  
 Emperours captaine did y<sup>e</sup> like. There  
 was in those of Totilas a Gothe cal-  
 led Ularus mounted on a good cour-  
 ser and excellently armed: who aduan-  
 cing himselfe before the battell, challeged  
 to fight with any man hand to hand.

A combate  
 hand to hand;

Against

## Of the boate of the

Against this man offered himselfe to  
the combat Artauades the Armerian  
of whome mention was made in the  
entering into Ueron. So in the sight of  
both tharmies, they fetchen their races  
& ranne one at another with their spea-  
res in the rest. Artauades thruste the  
Gothe through the right side with his  
speare so that he fell dolone dead. And  
he himself being driuen by mischaunce  
vpon the speare of the dead mā sticking  
in the ground through the only force &  
violence of his owne horse, ranne him-  
self vpon the poynt of it, in so muche  
that it wounded him through his Cu-  
ret, of the whyche wounde he dyed  
within thre dayes after. The two bat-  
telles in the meane tyme encountred  
very fierclye, & every man shewed his  
conning what he was able to doe with  
his weapon. When the battell was at  
the whotest, & that both parts wer most  
intentife to their se yghtinge, bidozir  
as yet enclining to neyther side, & soul-  
diers of Totilas whiche had passed the  
riner

After came & set upon The imperours  
Captaines behind. Whereupon arose a  
great noise, & many being beaten  
downe, first they brake the array of the  
Emperours arraye, & anone after put  
them to open flight. For after the time  
they battelles were once opened, their  
enemies pressed so sore upon them both  
before & behind, & that were some disper  
peled. Many were slain by the Gothes  
in y<sup>e</sup> chace, & many escaped by bypathes  
& unknowen wayes. But the greatest  
nūber was of thē y<sup>e</sup> were take prisoners  
Moreover (which neuer happened be  
fore) at y<sup>e</sup> standards, baners & ensignes,  
of the imperours army were taken in y<sup>e</sup>  
battell, & being brought vnto Totilas,  
made his victorie more famous & renou  
med, in y<sup>e</sup> he hauing scars half so many  
men in his armye as his enemies, had  
wittingly & willingly encountered w<sup>th</sup>  
greater power then his own, of whom  
thorough his martiall policie he had  
gotten the victorie. Hauing thus gotten  
the upper hand, he vied the victory very  
courage.

The Imperial  
alls are van  
quished by  
Totilas

The great &  
dishonorable  
losse in thys  
battell,



## Of the warre of the

The gentle-  
nes of Toti-  
las after hys  
victorie,

courteously bearing none of þe prisoners  
but sending diuers away about ransome.  
The which his gentlenesse dyd great-  
ly augment his honour and renoume.  
The captaynes of Justinia þe escapen  
fled first vnto Ibleasans, & from thence  
wet euerie mā a sundry way, busying  
thēselues as much as might be in rans-  
omng a new armye of men.

### The v. Chapter.

Iustine one of thempetours captaynes is be-  
sieged within Florens, & rescued by the  
other Imperial captaynes, who in the pursuite  
of their enemies through an vntrue report  
cast in localn feare are with great slaughter  
put to flight. Totilas recovereth diuers tow-  
nes in Lombardie, raiseth the walls of Bene-  
uent & besiegeth Naples. A comparison be-  
tweene the good gouernement of Totilas  
and the misgouernance of the Imperiall  
Captaynes.

**W**ithin a while after this victorie,  
Totilas now conceiuing greater  
things in his mind sent an army  
to Pettruria wherof he made captaynes  
thre of the worthiest men of al the Ger-  
thes

Gothen, Bologna, Modona, & Ferrara.  
 There was in Ferrara a captain cal-  
 led Justina, one of those he had bene at  
 the forsaie battell. After the dis-  
 continuance of the warre ceased, leaving of a  
 wife & children, & fortifying of the townes  
 nevertheless the manner of Gothen came  
 suddenly upon him, & he fled into the  
 walls of Florence. In this state was  
 thing so much as safety of his children.  
 For nothing could hee see to do, but  
 that which was to thin already, and  
 like to be long. He sent. With this he  
 he sent to the Lord of the Captaynes at  
 Ferrara & advertised they might have  
 gentle discomfite him, requesting them  
 of succour. Being moved with the same  
 Lord, Bologna, Capron, & John Malatesta  
 came into Ferrara with their armies  
 when the Gothen had understanding  
 of their approach, by & by they brake up  
 their legge & lodged their campe, not  
 faring anye further. Untill they came  
 to a place called Spucall to the west of  
 the town of Florence, yd qd 122  
 6000

the besiging  
 of Florence &  
 the raising of  
 the same.

In this as warning of confidence they  
 entered into a league, the Captaynes  
 thought it good to let his weapons behynd  
 the port for defence of the towne, & they  
 themselves with all the rest of the army  
 to stand the agaynst the enemy. While  
 they were on their way, it seemed good  
 to some one of the Captaynes should goe  
 quickly before to assault the enemy, & to  
 slay him from going afoore, & the rest  
 w<sup>ch</sup> all speed should followe after. Wher  
 letters were cast, the charge of goyng  
 before fell vnto John, who with his  
 men in good order of battell, made  
 haste towarde the enemyes. As the  
 enemyes being arrayed at the coming  
 of the battell, forsooke the place wher  
 they had encamped themselves from,  
 and gate them to a hyl thereby borne  
 steep and hard to climbe vnto. Yet for  
 all this John made no staye at the  
 matter when he came to place, but as  
 rated by battell agaynst the hyl, with  
 worthy & noble courage and courage to  
 get by by playng toyes, & by vntoyes  
 stood

stood valiantly at defence, as they that might easily make reuerens from the higher ground. In this place whyles John would to get vp, feightinge valiantly amonge the fo:meell, one of his companions was strike through wyth a pike and layne hard by his syde.

Whereupon forthwith rose an vntreie rumour (which was lightly beleued) that John was slayne, and therewithall his men began to runne awaye. The bruite hereof beinge reported to them that came with the rest of the armye be-  
hyns, together wyth the fearfull sight of such as were at the battell, made them also most shamefully to runne away. Forther was there any measure of their flight, but scatterynge themselves here some & there some they brake their aray and to:loke their standard. By meanes whereof the Captaynes themselves were faine to take theym to flight also wythoute compulsion of any enemye. After this time they came no more together againe, but euerie ma

An vntreie re-  
port cause of  
a shametull  
discomfiture.

D.I.

kept

## Of the warre of the

kept by himselfe one in one towne and another in another, as they had recovered into oute of the chace. Yet for all that, the Gothes returned not to the siege of Florens, partly for feare of the greates power of theyr enemye, the whiche although it were disperied, yet was it still within the compasse of Etruria, and partlye because the winter was nere. Thus was the ende of the seven yeres space Belisarius beganne the warres byste. The nexte yere following, as sone as the tyme of the yere serued to encampe in the fildes. Totilas leued an armye and came into Lombardy, and there besieged Telen, and Petra the whiche towne is now a dayes commonly called by a corrupte name. Byetines, as for all the reste of the townes of that countrey, for the most parte eyther he had sworne them by force, or els taken them by composition, wher he had thus compassed his matters in that countrey, he passed from thence with his

Totilas recovered towns in Lombardy

arise

came into Petrusia. Where finding al  
thynges whoter so byn then he loo  
ked for; he determyned fullye not to  
spende hys tyme in walke about them.  
And therefore passing ouer the riuert  
Tyber which bowndeth Petrusia, he  
tooke hys iourney throughe the Sam  
brys, the Sabines, and the Apulies  
into Campanye, in the whych place  
he wonne the Cytie of Beneuent,  
and rased downe the walles of it to  
the grounde. For he was loth that  
so stronge and defensible a Citie shoul  
be lefte for hys enemyes; (yf they  
shoulde happen to come into these  
borders, to make theyr Bulwarke  
and fortreffe of. The whiche done  
he besyged Naples; hauinge fyrste  
entreated theym gently wyth many  
wordes, that they woulde rather  
accepte hys frendshyppe, then procure  
hys displeasure. But hys wordes were  
to no purpose. For there was in garris  
son Conon one of Iulianus Cap  
taines wth a hand of not so fewe as a

rotillas rased  
the walles of  
Beneuent;

signified  
discomfited to  
- angustia  
- obscuris

The syege of  
Naples.

D. y.

thou.

201 Of the death of the  
 thousand soldiers, who would suffer  
 nothing to be done in counsell, with-  
 out his consent. The which thing whē  
 Totilas understood, he planted his  
 siege not farre from the Citie. But he  
 was assaulted, it not, but late still in  
 quiet. In the meane while he sent part  
 of his armye abroad, and recovered  
 some with certayne other towncs in  
 those borders, by the which he gate a  
 greate masse of money. Besides this  
 there happened certayne noble women  
 of Rome to be taken in those places. All  
 the which Totilas caused to be be-  
 come courteously entreated without  
 restraint of their libertie, and sent the  
 home againe to their husbandes and  
 parentes with an honorable company  
 to safeguard them. And forasmuche as  
 in those borders was not anye Cap-  
 taine or anye power to withstande the  
 doynages of Totilas, he sent este one  
 parte of his armye and este another,  
 so longe untill he had broughte under  
 his obeyaunce Appulia, Lucania, and  
 Calabrie

To the  
 the wall  
 of Rome

An example  
 of clementie  
 and magna-  
 nimie.

The  
 of the  
 of the



Calabre were all they, and by  
meanes whereof it came to passe, that  
there was not any more thinge pulled  
oute of those countreys to sustaine  
Captaines and souldiers, nor any man  
that would obey the Captaines, or for  
one foote oute of doores to goe to  
theym, For the souldiers luyng  
wthyn the walled towncs robbed and  
pylled as well they frendes as they  
foes, and though they were in  
well rule made haucke of all peoples.  
And the Captaynes for the same cause  
kepping themselves wthyn the walles,  
doo no more but onely defende the  
townes from the enemye. For they  
parted the Cyties amonge theym, so  
that John had the charge of Rome,  
Bertrando the charge of Naples, George  
an the charge of Verona, Justine the  
rule of Florens, and Constantian the  
keepage of Laurencia. In the meane  
tyme Naples began to be the more daye  
in worse case then other, by meanes  
of the siege. For Bothas hauing sent

See what  
want of good  
gouernement  
doth in war.

And thus  
the siege  
of Naples

## Of the Warre of the

For bys Sete had kepte them so short,  
that nothing could be conveyed in nei-  
ther by water nor by land. Whereby  
it was to be perceyued, that unless  
some waye were founde it, that Egypte  
was lyke at length to come in sub-  
jection to the enemye.

### The vii Chapter.

A newe Lieutenant is sent towards Italy,  
whose cowardnesse in protracting of the  
warre doth not a litle endamage the imperi-  
alls. Demetrius dealeth prudently for the  
rescuing of Naples, which for want of  
courage hath receyved the same damage  
to his owne destruction.

A newe lieue-  
tenant sent  
into Italy.

**I**n the hearinge of thes, and  
hearinge beleueled for the misse-  
rable estate of Italye and the  
dishonour of the Emperour, sent one  
Marinus (receiver of his reue-  
nues) into Italye, to amende and  
reparie thynges amysse, geuynge  
him a name of thoppes and an  
arme

armies of Thracians and Armenians.  
 Captaine of the Thracians was He-  
 rodian, and Captaine of the Arme-  
 nians was Phases, Besides these,  
 he had also in his shippes no small  
 number of the Hunnes, Marinius  
 departynge from Constantinople,  
 came into Epyre. There in delibe-  
 ratynge vpon the assayes of Ita-  
 ly, hangynge in doubte betwene  
 hope and feare, throughte his shoul-  
 fullnesse and cowardyse, he lost the  
 tyme. For this Marinius was a  
 good gentyllman, of a mylde na-  
 ture, meete for matters of peace,  
 but altogether vnshyppfull of warre-  
 lyke employes, and therefore fearfull,  
 sendynge delays and causynge doub-  
 tes in euery tyme, Now the affaires of  
 Italy at þe tyme, required quicke speede  
 both in consultynge and in workynge.  
 Iustinian sawe so small hope of any good  
 doynge in Marinius, he sent one De-  
 metrius (because that lately before  
 he had serued vnder Belisarius in

The coward  
 nes of Magi-  
 mus.

and by this  
 lawfull be-  
 liefe

101 Of the manner of the  
the warres in Italy, with another na-  
me into Sicill. This Demetrius when  
he was arrived in Sicill, hearing of  
the siege of Naples, and of the dis-  
tresse that they were putte vnto that  
were within, determined to succour  
them, and that withoute further de-  
laye. Now for as muche as he thought  
hymselfe not able to doo it by playne  
force, because that neither his ship-  
pes nor his army were sufficient ther-  
vnto, he devised this pollicie. He  
gate together all the shippes that he  
coude coume by in Sicill, and made  
of them a greate flete as to the shoyn,  
the whiche he fraughted with corne,  
and so made saile towards Naples.  
This thinge did both greate com-  
forte the besyeged, and also putte the  
Mothes in greate feare. For they  
had hearde saye he was comminge  
with a greate number of shippes,  
and they thoughte verely he hadde  
broughte a greate power of men in  
them. And surely yf he had come  
directly

The prudent  
pollicie of De-  
metrius yf he  
had followed  
it.

dyrectlye into Naples at the first, all  
thynges had happened to good success,  
and the besieged Cytye had out of all  
doubte bene saved. For hys enemies  
were so dysmayed at the multitude of  
hys shippes that they durste not haue  
made anye cotinentaunce of resistens.  
Whobreit he knowyng his own weak-  
nesse, durste not arryue at Naples,  
but went to Rome, to the intent there  
to furnyshe hys nauye wyth men, and  
so to sayle stronglye vnto Naples.  
But the souldiers that were at Rome  
woulde not take shippynge for hym.  
For by reason they had bene vanquish-  
ed by the Gothes in twoo foughte  
battellos, they stode in feare of  
theyr beyonde all measure. Weyngt  
therefore destitute of this hope, De-  
metrius was compelled to go against  
hys enemyes wyth those shippes one-  
lye, that he broughte wyth hym from  
Constantinople. Morilas kepte con-  
tinuallye readye furnysshed certayne  
swifte shippes in the haue of

Occasion let  
shyppe wil not  
be cawght  
again.

D.b

Naples

## Of the warre of the

Naples, and alwayes tooke diligent  
heede to the dole of Demetrius, where  
foze when he heard that Demetrius  
was sette on fire of Rome toward Na-  
ples, and that he was arrived at the  
nerte shore, sodaynely he sette by-  
pon hym with his Dynesses tho-  
rowe the whiche sodayne unlooked  
foz assaulte, the Gyppen and soul-  
diers were stricken in suche a feare,  
that they tooke theym to flighte.

The Gythes pursuynge them with  
theyr swifte Dynesses, made a great  
slaughter and tooke all Demetrius  
shyppes with theyr freight and men.  
For none escaped of that flete excepte  
it were suche as at the beginning had  
leapt into bootes & hidden themselves,  
among whom was Demetrius Cap-  
taine of the said flete:

### ¶ The .vii. Chapter.

Demetrius sayinge agayne to the re-  
cowynge of Naples is taken prysoner,  
where-

whereupon Naples is yielded to Tullus  
who becometh hymselfe verye courteous  
lye and friendlye both to the towne smen  
and to the Emperours souldyers, but to-  
warde his owne men extendeth much se-  
ueritie in keeping warlike discipline.

**A**ND thus Spartine sayled  
out of Cypr into Sicill wth a  
greater myge, and a greater  
furniture of men. And when he was  
arrived at Syracuse, through his ac-  
customed cowardise in delayinge and  
dylating of, he losse the time againe.  
Neither regarding the necessity, nor  
the intreatynce of suche as were be-  
sieged. At the lengthe when Justi-  
nian had sente straighe charge vnto  
hym, not without threats, that  
he shoulde procede, yet coulde not  
all that cause hym to sayle agaynst  
his enemyes, but he deliuered the  
charge of his fleete to Demetrius  
Herodian and Phauls, and he him-  
selfe abode still in Sicill.

A cowardly  
carpet  
knyght.

*Francys  
Smyle*



## Of the taking of the

It was now the dead of the winter  
when they beganne to sette forth.

A tempest.

And when they came within a litle  
of Naples Todayriely the fleet was ta-  
ken with a belement tempest, in so  
muche that neyther oyes nor anye con-  
nyng in the world could save theym  
but that they were driven a land ver-  
force vpon the shore where their ene-  
mies were encamped. The Gothes  
perceyvinge that, ranne together and  
without anye ado took the shippes  
If any made resistens, they slew them,  
the rest they tooke prisoners. Of the  
whych number Demetrius was one.  
Whom Totilas commaunded to be  
broughte fettered in chaines vnto the  
walles of Naples. Where callinge  
Conon Captayne of the Locatie and  
the souldyers with the Cyprians of  
Naples, Demetrius by the kynges  
commaundement made an oration,  
perswadyng theym not to looke for  
anye more helpe. For consyderyng  
that those twoo fleets with all they  
men

Demetrius  
taken priso-  
ner.

men and furniture were losse; there  
remayned not anye hope for theym to  
truste unto. They that were besy-  
ged beyng sore pyned with hunger,  
when they sawe Demetrius taken  
and all hope of comforte cutte of, fell  
to weeping and lamentation; not  
knowynge what to doe or which waye  
to tourne theym in so muche that all  
the Cytie was in a wonderfull trou-  
ble and disquietnesse for feare. When  
Totilas perceined that, he called them  
and spake vnto theym as they stood  
vppon the walles in this wyse: Ye  
men of Naples, we haue not goone  
aboute to besyge your Cytie, for  
anye anger or displeasure that we  
beare agaynst you, but to thentent  
that by settinge you free from the bon-  
dage of oure enemye, we myght re-  
compence you for the troubles that  
you haue suffered in the tyme of these  
warres at oure enemyes handes, for  
kepeinge your allegaunce to the Go-  
thes. For you onely of all the Ita-

lians

**O**f the warre of the  
Italians betwixte your wills  
came in sublecion of oure enemyes,  
compelled thereto by violence & slaugh-  
ter, and well nye by the bitter destruc-  
tion of your Cytie. And therefore  
me thynkes I am ashamed that we  
haue besyged you, but that ne-  
cessitye constrained vs because oure  
enemyes were amongst you. Wher-  
fore assure your selues, rather of  
a good tourne and of frendshyppe at  
oure hand then of anye punishment.  
Wherefore for your sakes we will not  
be anye thyngc straghte laced toward  
oure prienspes that are in the Towne  
wth you. For yf so be it they will  
render it vpp, they shall haue fre  
libertye and leaue to chose, whether  
they will setle vs in vtre warres  
in lyke estate and case as other of  
oure owne souldyers, or elles de-  
parte whither they lyke themselves  
wth bagge and baggage. Whys  
oure promysse we are contented to  
conferme wth an othe. Bothe the  
Peaple

Neapolitanes and the Emperours  
 souldiers contemned Totilas bys  
 wordes . Nevertheless to shewent  
 theys pelyngs myghte seme the more  
 bonnest and reasonable , they despy-  
 red a Truce for thyrtye dayes, yf per-  
 chaunce anye bodye woulde rescowe  
 theym wpythin that tyme . Totilas  
 aunswered that he was contented to  
 geue theym not thyrtye , by thys  
 thyrtye dayes respyte . The besye-  
 ged wonderynge at so greate libertye,  
 and playnely perceyvinge that there  
 was no hope of helpe , wpythin fewe  
 dayes after sette open theys gates,  
 and receyved Totilas and hys armye  
 into the Towne . When he was  
 comynge into Naples , he entreated  
 not anye man otherwyse then well  
 nyether was he greuous to anye per-  
 sonne , but rather used suche huma-  
 nitie and courtesye as woulde not have  
 bene thoughte to have bene in a bar-  
 barous Gothe.

Naples it yet  
 ded to toti-  
 las.

the curteous  
 and frendlye  
 behavioyr of  
 Totilas  
 toward the  
 neapolitanes.

## Of the waite of the

For where as many through hunger  
were broughte so bare and so weake;  
that they were not able to totre on  
their legges, and were fallen by the; to  
the intent they should not cast them-  
selues awayne with overlayinge their  
stomackes by feedyng to greadely, he  
looked carefullye and diligentlie vnto  
them, that not onely the Citizens  
of Naples. But also the souldoyers  
had euerye daye fowle, a small pyt-  
ians allowed them by wayghte,  
streyghtelye obseruynge that they  
shoulde not haue more anye where-  
elles and that euerye daye by litle  
and litle they meales shoulde be en-  
creased. To Conon and the men of  
warre whych were mynded to depart,  
he appoynted shippes to contiey them.  
And where as by meanes of contra-  
rye wyndes they coulde not departe  
withyn the daye limited vnto them,  
yet not with standynge he gaue  
them free libertye. And furthermore  
when

When as the wynde continued still a-  
gagynst them, and that they determined  
to go alway byland, he lent them horses  
and beasts for their cariages, allowing  
them mozcouer victualls and mony to  
spend by the waye, and also sente of the  
Gothes with them to sauconduyt the.

The seueritie  
of Totilas to-  
ward male-  
factours.

Thus Totilas vsed gentlenesse to-  
ward straungers, but among hys owne  
men he kepte so streight order, that he  
suffered no offence to scape unpunished  
the ponyshmente of stealers, quarrel-  
lers, & rauishers of women was death;  
and the forfeityng of all their goodes, to  
the vse of them agaynst whom the dys-  
pleasure was done. By meanes wher-  
of wheresoeuer the Gothes encamped,  
or passed in and out throug any of the  
Cittyes or countreies that were in leage  
with them, there was no harme done  
to any of them. But the case stode farre  
otherwyse in those daies with the Cap-  
taynes of Justinian. For the Captaynes  
themselues could not hold their hands  
from doing wrong, and the souldyers

Licencious li-  
berty pernici-  
ous to men of  
warre.

P. J. through

## Of the warre of the

thorough their euell ensample fallen to  
all kinde of licentiousnesse, absti-  
ned from nothing that was euill. Nei-  
ther was there any thyng more mys-  
erable in those dayes, then the people  
of Italy that were vnder thempeze,  
beyng wythoute theyr walles spoy-  
led by the enemye, and wythin their  
walles by theyr owne men of warre.

For the Captaynes hauyng taken the  
strong holdes so; theyr owne safegard,  
passed not what became of the poore  
commons. Throughe thys inu-  
rious dealing, despayre so increa-  
sed daye by daye more and more, that  
the Emperoure was fayne to deter-  
myne wyth hymselfe to sende Belis-  
arius thither agayne. For all the  
other Captaynes were so farre from  
recoveryng that which was losse, that  
it was not lyke they shoulde any long  
tyme be able to kepe that whiche they  
had.

The



## The viij. Chapter.

¶ Belisarius being sente againe into Italy, in  
hys waye doth rescowre Hydrunt besieged  
by the Gothes. the myserable estate of I-  
taly at that tyme, Totilas receaueth Tibur  
and besiegeth Auximum, Vitalis is for-  
saken of hys owne souldiers. Belisari-  
us sendeth succour to Auximum, and re-  
payreth Pylanum Totilas besiegeth Aseu-  
lum and Firmum.

**F**OR these considerations Belisari-  
us was chosen agayne to take the  
charge of the warres in Italy: and  
yet the warres were scarcely finished  
the whyche all this meane tyme he had  
made agaynst the Gothes. Therefore  
when he sawe there was no remedye  
but to muster helpe souldiers, (for he  
had lefte hys olde armye at the ryuer  
Euphrates,) he went about al Thence,  
where throughe hys lybcrall spending  
he gathered to the number of foure  
thousande withoute commission, the

Belisarius  
diligence in  
choysing of  
hys souldiers

W. H.

whiche

## Of the warre of the

whiche he embarked speedely, and taking with hym vitalles the Lieutenant of Illiricum whiche came newly to hym oute of Italy, sayled forthwarde, & haupng cut ouer the Roman sea, arrived at Salons. In the tyme of this iourney, he raysed a siege aboute Hydunt a Towne of Calabze. For they that were besieged being compelled thereto by the Gothes for want of vittuals, had compounded to yelde by the towne by a certayne daye, if they were not rescolued in y meane time. Whereof Belisarius haupng knowledge, commaunded Valentine to sayle thither, & to cary with hym coyne & other necessaries, and to bypng awaye the souldyers that had bene long besieged there, putting newe in their romes. This was an easy matter to bypng to effecte. For the Gothes after the truce taken, looked but flyghtly to them, not so muche as mistrusting that any body would come to succor them. By meanes whereof when

The rescowig  
of Hidrunte  
now called  
Otranto.

In greatest  
calme for a  
storme  
prouide.

When the flete came fuddenly vpon the  
 vnlooked for, they trembled for feare &  
 were fayne to breake vp their fiegge and  
 get them further of. Valentyne ente-  
 ring into the colone, toke the olde foul-  
 diers out of the holme, and placed them  
 in their fteades, leauing them virtu-  
 ally for a whole yeare. The which done  
 he returned with thofe fhyppes that he  
 brought with hym, into the reaft of the  
 flete at Salons. After hys returne Be-  
 lifarius fayed to Apole, where hauing  
 taried a while to practife hys pong foul-  
 difours that he had learned in Albiace  
 at length with hys indett ransome he fayed  
 led to Rauenna. At hys coming thither  
 he founde all things in worfe cafe  
 though Italy the he thought they had  
 bene. For hys enemyes fciemed to haue  
 the better end of the flaffe enery wher,  
 and to ftand in beft hope and poftibilitie.  
 Contrarywife hys frendes and re-  
 beccentes were euerywhere through  
 all Italy discouraged and brought in  
 defpaire. The cities and people of the

Belifarius ar-  
 riuall in Italy.

The misery of  
 Italy through  
 misgouerne-  
 ment,

## Of the want of the

country because they were pilled & molested by the men of warre, & the men of warre because the emperor was behind hand w<sup>th</sup> their wages so; a long tyme & payed none, became stubbozne and fractious, refusing either to be ruled by the captaines, or to let onesote out of doies to the warres. And so say the truth they were brought to a very smal number. As for the coming of Belisarius, it did rather encrease their despair then any whit comfort them. For albeit he were a notable captaine, & out of all doubt in those daies peerlesse, yet he was a very spall of Cheualrie, yet not with standing forasmuch as he brought but a slender company with him (for he had but foure thousand & those were all unpurified and fresh water soldiers and had no money to deale amongst them, when he preached vnto them at Ravenna declaring the cause of hys coming and exhorting them to goe forward w<sup>th</sup> the warres; neither the Goldenesmen nor yet the men of warre were

A Captaine is  
able to do no  
thing with-  
out men and  
money,

The matter of  
this story is  
very strange  
and wonderful

were glad to heare hym speake, as gave  
any token of comfort & good hope. In  
somuche that it repented Belisarius  
hymselfe that he was come into Italy.

In the meane tyme there rose a dissen- Totilas recea-  
meth Tibur.  
tion betwene the townesmen and the  
souldiers of Tibur, by meanes where-

of Totilas being called to the ayde of  
the one part receaued the whole towne.

The Citie of Tibur is a nere neigh-  
bour vnto Rome, being distant from  
thence no further then sytene myles.

The taking whereof was a great ex-  
cess and noyous to the Romaynes, as  
wherby they were dysappointed of all  
thynges in Latium. After thys Toti-

las hauyng perfecte intelligence of the  
commynge of Belisarius, wente with  
hys armye into the countrey of the Vi-

centes, and encamped aboute Auri-

munum. The very same season had Be-

lisarius sent Vitalis with a conuenient  
crewe of Illirians into the countrey a-  
boute Bononie,

Tibur xvi  
miles from  
Rome.

He besieged  
Auximum,

the vnsayth-  
fulnesse of the  
Illirian souldi-  
ers towarde  
their captai-  
n.

## Of the warre of the

After the tyme he had wonne a certain  
towne thereaboutes and had bene re-  
trained into Bononie, the Illirians  
without any cause why or wherefore for-  
soke hym, and assembling themselves  
together went their wayes home. For  
y<sup>e</sup> which dede they afterward alledged  
this excuse vnto the emperor, that whi-  
les they wer serving him in his warres  
in Italy, the Collectors of his tributes,  
did set their lytelson in their Countie,  
and caste their wiues and childzen out  
of house and home, by meanes whereof  
they were compelled to retorne thither  
to defend their owne. When Totilas  
heard of this sodayne departure of the  
Illirians he sente out an armye of Go-  
thes, in hope to haue take Vitales and  
the rest of his companie tardie. But  
they preuenting hym, had recouered  
vnto Rauenna. Belisarius knowing  
that they which were besieged at Au-  
riminum were sore oppressed, sent to their  
ayde a thousand horsemen ouer whom  
he made three Captaynes Teremunt,  
Ricilas,

Niclas, and Sabintan, whose entering into the colone privately by nyghte, the next day following made a skirmyshe with the Gothes, by whiche Niclas one of the Captaynes was slaine. The rest within a fewer dayes after determined to departe. For they sawe that by theyr staying there, they dyd but helpe to spend their frendes victualls and necessities, and coulde do their enemyes no harme. Whereupon slealyng out of the colone by nyghte, when they had gone aboute thre myles on their waye, they fell into an ambushe of their enemyes. By whiche being be set on all sydes and so put to flight, they loste two hundred of their compaigne together with their apparell, armour, and all other stuffe & the beasts that carryed them. The residue after long and weary travell recovered unto Arimin. Fanum & Dysanrum are Cities standing vppon the coaste of the Adriatike sea, and are situate betwene Ariminum and Arimine. These colones at the beginning of these



## Of the warre of the

Belisarius re-  
paireth Pisau-  
rum, & man-  
neth in nowe  
called Pezaro

warres, had Vitigis set on fyre, & bea-  
ten down the walles of the mydway  
to the grounde. Of these two Belisari-  
us determined to repayre Pysaurum,  
and to place a Troope of horsemen in  
the same, for the accomplishment wher-  
of, he sent workemen thither secretly,  
to take iust measure of the gates, the  
whiche he caused to be framed at Ma-  
uenna with lockes, hinges, barres, and  
all other yron worke belonging vnto  
them, and caused them to be conueyed  
by water to Pysaurum, writing to the  
Captaynes and horsemen of Arimin-  
that they should sodainly take possession  
and hang by the gates and mende by  
the walles of rough worke, and cleanse  
the dyches. As for all kynde of vnder  
provided that it was sent them by sea.  
The horsemen of Arimin, therefore  
when they had taken Pysaurum, did all  
thynges accordyng to Belisarius com-  
maundement. Totilas perceauyng  
that, went thither with a great power  
to interrupte them of their worke.

But

But the soldiers had so busily beset  
them in fortifying the dykes, in casting  
of the trenches, in making of Ram-  
pires, in fortifying the towne, and in  
reparing the walles & the bulwarries,  
that the kyng wondered to see so many  
thynges so wyllye deuised and polliti-  
quely brought to passe in so fewe daies  
And therefore whē he had taried a while  
there aboutes, soasmuch as he saw he  
could do no good, he returned into his  
campe before Aurimū, neuer & neuer  
of his purpose. Howbeit Totilas & the  
Gothes perceauyng that Belisarius  
shewed not hymselfe abroad in the o-  
pen fieldes with the imperours arme  
in no parte of Italy, but only kept him-  
self within the walles towne and de-  
fended them, they determined not to  
set altogether aboute Aurimum onely  
but to make warre agaynst other Ci-  
ties also. Whereupon Totilas went  
with an arme and besieged Asculum  
and Firmum among the Picentes.

Totilas besie-  
geth Asculum  
and Firmum,

Belisarius

## Of the Wars of the

Belisarius being not able to rescoue  
such as were besieged that called vpon  
hym dayly for helpe, (for he had not so  
great a power that he durst venturs a-  
broad agaynst the Gothes) was in great  
perplexitie, and toke it very greuously  
that hys name should be so dishonored.  
At the length he sent John Vitalician to  
The emperor to enforme hym of the  
state of Italy, by who he addrested his  
letters also, the tenor wherof contained  
thys in effecte.

### The. ix. Chapter.

The Copie of Belisarius letters to the em-  
peror the good successe of Totilas, the vali-  
ant Demeanor of Silius the trayterous  
murdering of Ciprian and the manlinesse  
of his souldiers.

Belisarius let-  
ters to the em-  
peror.

**M**ost noble and puissant Em-  
peror your Maiestie hath sent  
me into Italy slenderly furny-  
shed of men, horses, and munitions, the  
which thing I declared vnto you before  
my

my departure beseeching your highnesse  
to haue redressed the matter. In the  
which suite albeit I could not preuaile:  
yet notwithstanding it was my durye  
to be obedient to your commaundement.  
Whereby I was constrained to come  
forth with a fewe Thracians and Illi-  
rians, the same being freewater sould-  
iers and altogether vnskilfull of the  
warres, not knowing so much as howe  
to holde their weapons in their hands.  
And as for the olde souldiers that I  
found in Italy, by reason they had bene  
banquished in diuerse battells beefore  
by the Gothes, they are so afrayed of  
them, that they dare scarce once loke  
vpon them. Besides this, soasmuch  
as they haue bene long time defrauded  
of their wages, they are not able to sur-  
myse themselves agayne with horse  
and armour losse and broken in the for-  
mer warres, neyther will they consent  
to goe forth with them. And yet to saye  
the truth, there is not so greate a num-  
ber of them, that they can encounter a  
gaunst

## Of the warre of the

gainst the power of the enemye, without their owne manifeste perill and danger. For the greater part of them that were wonte to fight vnder your hyghnesse banner in Italy, prouoked by the aforesayd displeasures, haue of their owne accord reuolted to your enemye. Furthermore you may not account hereafter, that you are lyke to haue any reuenues here, toward the payment of your souldiers, considering that the enemy hath reconquered the greater parte of Italy, & that which remaineth is so empouerished and afflicted by the warres, that it is not by any meanes able to yelde you tributes. Wherefore if the presence of Belisarius be sufficient to recover Italy, you haue done as much as may be done in that behalfe for I am here in Italy. But if you purpose to overcome your enemies in dede your stateske must make other provision. For a Captayne (be he neuer so valiante, polittique and fortunate,) is able to dooe nothing, if he haue not wher.

toher wyth to accomplishe his deuises.  
 And therefore it is requisite that you  
 send me hether an armie of myne own  
 parrised souldiers, together wyth a  
 greate multitude of the Hunnes and  
 other Barbarous people. Moreouer  
 you must of necessitie proude that we  
 may haue alwayes stooze of monye.  
 for wythout that, there is no good to be  
 done in warrres. Thus much dyd Be-  
 lisarius write to thempereure at that  
 tyme. John going to Iustinian with  
 these instructions, and haupng tarped  
 there a certayne tyme, had a very slowe  
 & could sure for he could bring nothing  
 to effecte. In the meane while foras-  
 muche as no man rescolued Asculum &  
 Firmi & were besieged by Totilas, he  
 toke the by composition. From thence  
 he departed out of the Picentes in-  
 to Umbria and besieged Alesium and  
 Spolet. Captayne of Spolet was  
 Herodian and Captayne of Alesium  
 was Hissfride. Herodian although  
 his piece were stronge and defensible,  
 yet

The success  
 of Totilas.

## Of the warre of the

The valiant &  
faithfull de-  
meanor of Si-  
sifride.

yet notwithstanding he toke truce for  
a fewe daies, within the which because  
no rescue came, yelbyng the towne and  
the holde at the day appointed, he him-  
self with his souldiers revolted to To-  
tilas. But Sisifride behaved hymselfe  
more valiantlye : for albeit his piece  
were nothyng so strong as the others,  
yet coulde he neuer abyde to here any  
woorde of composition, but lyke a stout  
warrior, issued oute valiantly diuerse  
tymes vpon the Gothes, and foughte  
sundrye skymishes wth them to his  
great prayse and commendation. How-  
beit at the length fighting manfully he  
was slayne by his enemyes. The Citi-  
zens of Assis beeing destitute of the  
helpe of that worthy Captayne, within  
fewe dayes after yelded themselves &  
their towne vnto Totilas. Fro thence  
Totilas led his armye against Perusi-  
um. Captayne therof was Ciprian of  
whom mention is made before among  
the Captaynes of Iustinian. Totilas  
perceauyng þ he could not wyne him,  
neither

The trayte-  
rous murthe-  
ring of Cipri-  
an & the ma-  
folnesse of his  
souldiers.



neither by faire meanes nor by soule;  
corrupted one of his esquires called  
Aliarus for a ptece of mony, by whose  
falsehood and treacherie he kyld him.  
Nevertheless after the death of Cyprian,  
the souldiers punished the treason  
vpon Aliarus head; and manfully de-  
fended the Citie still.

¶ The .x. Chapter.

¶ Totilas besegeth Rome, and Belisarius pre-  
pareth to rescowe the same. The misfor-  
tune of thimperialls at Portua, Pelagius a  
Decon of Rome goeth to Totilas to en-  
treate for his Citizens & cannot be heard.

**T**otilas therefore minding not to  
linger about it any lenger, brake  
vp his siege there, & made toward  
Rome. When he came thither, he  
planted his siege aboute the same in  
places conuenient, but yet he trou-  
bled not the husbandmen. For all the  
tyme of thys warrres he neuer suffered  
anye of the Tyllmen and husbandmen

Totilas besegeth Rome.

## Of the warre of the

The valiant &  
faithfull de-  
meanor of Si-  
sifride.

The trayte-  
rous murthe-  
ring of Cipri-  
an & the mā-  
folnesse of his  
souldiers.

yet notwithstanding he toke truce for  
a fewe daies within the which because  
no rescue came, yeloyng the towne and  
the holde at the day appointed, he him-  
self with his souldiers revolted to To-  
tilas. But Sissifride behaved hymselfe  
more valiantlye : for albeit his piece  
were nothyng so strong as the others,  
yet coulde he neuer abyde to here any  
woorde of composition, but lyke a stoute  
warrior, issued oute valiantly diuerse  
tymes vpon the Gothes, and foughte  
sundrye skymishes wyth them to his  
great prayse and commendation. How-  
beit at the length fighting manfully he  
was slayne by his enemyes. The Citi-  
zens of Assis beeing destitute of the  
helpe of that worthy Captayne, within  
fewe dayes after yelded themselves &  
their towne vnto Totilas. Fro thence  
Totilas led his armye against Perusi-  
um. Captayne therof was Ciprian of  
whom mention is made before among  
the Captaynes of Justinian. Totilas  
perceauyng he could not wyne him,  
neither

neither by faire means nor by soule,  
corrupted one of his esquires called  
Aliarus for a ptece of mony, by whose  
falschod and treacherie he kyld him.  
Neuerthelesse after the death of Cypri-  
an, the souldiers punished the treason  
vpon Aliarus head; and manfully de-  
fended the Citie Will.

¶ The .x. Chapter.

¶ Totilas besegeth Rome, and Belisarius pre-  
pareth to rescowe the same. The misfor-  
tune of thimperialls at Portua, Pelagius a  
Decon of Rome goeth to Totilas to en-  
treate for his Citizens & cannot be heard.

**T**otilas therefore minding not to  
linger about it any lenger, brake  
vp his siege there, & made toward  
Rome. When he came thither, he  
planted his siege aboute the same in  
places conuenient, but yet he trou-  
bled not the husbandmen. For all the  
tyme of thys warres he neuer suffered  
anye of the Wyllmen and husbandmen

Totilas besegeth Rome.

## Of the warre of the

to be hurte or hyndred by hys men of war. There was in garrison at Rome Vellus one of the Emperours Captaynes, & Canon whiche not long Sythenus had bene Captayne of Naples. Also Belisarius had sent thither, Artasyras a Persian, and Barbatian a Thracian with a conuenient number of souldyers, to loke to the saufe keepinge of the Citie with the other Captaynes. The Gothes beinge thus settled aboute Rome, Artasyras & Barbatian yssued oute wpth theyr retinew and foughte wpth them. At the fyrste they putte theym to flyghte, but thow we followynge the chace to farre, they were at length intrapped by their enemyes, and wpth the losse of the more parte of theyr men hardlye and narrowlye escaped themselues into the Cyte. From that tyme forward hope daylye decayinge, fyrste came derth and afterwarde fauyne amonge theym. For nothyng could be conueyed into theym by lande, by reason the

the Gothes had besette theym rounde  
aboute . no: yet by water so:asmuche  
as the nauye that Totilas had of late  
buylded at Naples , and then sente  
abroade , so scoured the Seas that no  
shyppe of burden coulde passe for  
theym . Besydes thys the verye  
same tyme arose wythin the Cytte  
of Rome greate presumptions of  
treason . For the whyche Cethegus  
chefe President of the Senate of  
Rome , beyng banished the Cy-  
tte fledde to Centinucelles . While  
these thynges were a dooynge at  
Rome , another armye of the Go-  
thes by the commaundemente of  
Totilas besyged Pleasans . The  
same is a greate Cytte by the Ry-  
uer Po , and all onelye of the Cy-  
ttes of that Countrey , contynued  
in faythefull obedyence to the Em-  
pyre . When Belisarius behelde  
these thynges , he was verye  
sorrowefull and full of care for  
the peryll of the Cytte of Rome ,

Belisarius de-  
uiseth to suc-  
cour Rome.

## Of the warre of the

in as muche as he was not able to re-  
medy it from Rauenna where he was,  
because that w<sup>th</sup> that small and ten-  
der compagne whiche he had aboute  
hym, it was not for him to depart from  
thence, consyding hys enemyes held  
all the Countries betwene hym and  
Rome, so that he could not goe thither  
by land, wherebpon he deuised to suc-  
cour them another waye. For the per-  
formance whereof leauynge Iustine  
with a band of souldyers at Rauenna,  
he hymselfe wente to ✕ Dirrachium  
in Dalmatia, entendinge there to a-  
waite the commynge of a new armie  
from the Emperour. In the means  
tyme Rome was straghtly besyged  
in suche sorte that all thynges were  
worse and worse, and lyke to fall to vt-  
ter decaye and ruine. Valentine and  
Vhocas beyng sent before by Belli-  
sarius, helde the Towne of Portua,  
and from thence byd grea<sup>t</sup>lye molests  
and endomage the enemye w<sup>th</sup> con-  
tinuall robes almoste daye by daye.

After

Now called  
Durazo.

After they had doone thus a certayne  
 space w<sup>th</sup> good successe, and by mea-  
 nes thereof greatl<sup>y</sup>e relined them that  
 were besyged, at length fallinge into the euill for-  
 an ambushe and beyng encircled of tune of the  
 their enemyes they were slayne, and imperialles.  
 but a verie fewe of theyr souldyers es-  
 caped, the whyche had muche a doe to  
 recouer the towne of Bonua. Thys  
 slaughter of the Captaynes and the  
 souldyers drewe w<sup>th</sup> it a greater dis- One mischief  
 commoditie, for it was the losse of a in anothers.  
 greate deale of corne by suche a mea- necke.  
 nes Vigilius the Bysshoppe of Rome  
 lvinge at that tyme in Sicill, hea-  
 ryng that the people of Rome were  
 sore afflicted w<sup>th</sup> famyne, had shyp-  
 ped a greate deale of Corne and sent  
 it towarde Rome. The Gothes ha-  
 vyng knowledge thereof, when the  
 shippes approached conueyed themsel-  
 ues befoze into the haven, and hiding  
 them behynde the Towres and buyl-  
 dynges laye readye for theym in Am-  
 bushe. The souldyers that were with



## Of the waere of the

in the towne so; as muche as lately be  
fore they had losse they; Captaynes,  
and their companions so; the mosse  
parte were slayne, they beinge so  
sewe lesse, durste not aduenture out  
against their enemyes, but as well  
as they coulde from the walles and  
bulwarkes wyth shakinge they; gar-  
mentes, wyth wagginge their handes  
and wyth cryng oute a loude to them  
made tokens to the shypmen that  
there was treason in the haven, war-  
nyng theym to beware and not to ar-  
rue there. But the shypmen (as  
they that had not heard anye thyng of  
the unfortunate battell and the losse of  
the Captaynes) took those signes and  
tokens that were made, as signes and  
tokens of gladnesse and encourage-  
ment to come with more speede. And  
bypon making the more haste, wyth  
a freshe gale of winde they entered into  
the haven. Where they were all taken  
by the Gothes breakynge oute of the  
ambushe, to the greete discomforte  
and

and dispayre of the people of Rome,  
whiche hunge wholly vppon the one-  
lye hope of that corne . In so muche  
that now the Towne was oppressed  
wth intolerable famayne . And the  
Gothes therevppon preased the more  
boldly vpon them . There was at the  
same tyme in Rome a certayne Dea-  
con called Pelagius , who in this dis-  
tresse of famine, had shewed very ma-  
nye & notable workes of merce vppon  
the people of Rome, by laying out hys  
monye & relieving the want and need-  
nesse of euerye man . For the whiche  
almost dedes ( whereas his name was  
greatly renounced in times past, now  
it was farre moze renounced then be-  
fore, ) He remained came vnto this mā  
humbly besleching him for the saul-  
gard of the people of Rome, he would  
bouchsafe to go of Ambassade to Toti-  
las and entreate him to graunt them a  
truce for a fewe daies within the whi-  
che onlesse rescouer came, the Cytie  
should be geuen vppe vnto hym.

An example  
of employng  
spirituall  
goodes.

Relig.

Pelagius

## Of the warre of the

Prosperitie  
maketh men  
forget them-  
selues.

Belagius forasmuch as he sawe there  
was none other remedye, obeyed the  
peoples request, and wyth hys instruc-  
tions went to Totilas into his campe.  
Totilas coniecturinge the effecte of  
hys errand (for he had learned by the  
rennegates the vtter necessitie and dis-  
tresse that the besieged were brought  
vnto) entertayned Belagius verie ho-  
nourably at hys commynge. Howbeit  
before he had begonne to declare hys  
message, he hymselfe presentynge him,  
wyth a longe and bytter oration, in-  
ueighed against the Romaynes, casting  
them in the teth wyth the benefites of  
Theoderich and the Gothes towarde  
them, and repprounge theym of theyr  
vntrouthe towarde the Gothes. In  
the end he concluded that there was no  
waie eyther of communication or com-  
position, onles they woulde beat downe  
their walles, and wholly submit them-  
selues & al that they had bodles & goods  
to the wil and discretion of the Gothes  
to be dealte withall in suche wyse as  
shoulde

Should please the conquerours. Pelagius hearing him talke so bytterly and disdaynefully and thynkinge in hymselfe that it booteth not to stand in contention wpth hym, sayde thus vnto him. Forasmuch as thou Totilas hast not vouchesaue to here an Ambassadour tell hys message, but by pveuenfyng hym halfe abridged hym of the lybertie of speaking, we will fye vnto God who of hys Justice is wont to abate the courages of men, when they grow ouer proude and statelly. When he had sayde those wordes, he returned by and by into the Cytie. The Romaynes seynge hym come agayne wthoute speding of hys purpose, were in suche an agonie that they wylt not what to doe nor whyche way to turne them. For on the oneside they were afflicted wth intolerable famine, and on thother side stood befoze their eyes the outrageous cruelty of Totilas & of the gothes, whose most cruel hands rather then they would fall into, they fullye

God the refuge in extremities.

A.b.

deter:

**Of the warre of the**  
determined to starue theselues for hun-  
ger. By meanes whereof the people of  
Rome suffered and abode such thyn-  
ges, as it is a miserie euen to reherse  
them.

**[The .xi. Chapter.]**

**I**ohn Viralian cometh with a newe po-  
wer from the emperour, wherupon aduise  
is taken for the succouring of Rome, ac-  
cording to the whiche Belisarius goeth to  
Pompa by water commaundinge Iohn to  
mete him there by lande. But he through  
the prosperous successe that he hath agais-  
t the Gothes cometh not there at all. By  
meanes whereof Belisarius is faine to de-  
uise another way for the succouring of the  
Citie the which by his industrie takynge  
good effect agais-  
t the enemy is by the folly  
of his owne men interrupted to his owne  
great sorrowe and appairing of his health  
through rage of anger and todayne feare,  
and to the utter prejudice of Rome. For  
Totilas anon after taketh and sacketh it  
the whyche done he maketh an oratyon  
to his souldyers.

**I**n the meane tyme Iustinian sent John w<sup>th</sup> an armie vnto Belisarius. They were not any great number that he set forth at y<sup>e</sup> tyme, but he prepared to send a greater power oute of hand. For the whiche occasion he had sent his Chamberlaine Marces vnto y<sup>e</sup> Crulians & other barbarous nations inhabiting about the riuer of Danow, of the which some were alreadye come into Thracie. When tharmies were assembled to Dirrachis, & that consultation was had as concerning the war, it was agreed by one consent first of all to rescow the romains. But holo that might be done there was diuerse of opinions. John perswaded to march w<sup>th</sup> all y<sup>e</sup> whole power together thorow Calabre & appulla & so to go to Rome. For if they went all in one compaigny they might be the better able to get the upper hand wheras if tharmie should be deuided and some should go by sea and some by lande, none of bothe partes should be able to matche the enemye.

Belisa.

the returne  
of iohn with  
answer from  
thempour.

Debating in  
counsell for  
the rescow-  
ing of romes.

## Of the warre of the

Belisarius said he could wel alote the same opinion, if the people of Rome stood not at such an exigent. But now considering their estate, it was needeful to make all speede y<sup>e</sup> might be. It was a long iourney to go throug Calabze and Appulia, & if their enemies should mete them they might cast many letts in their way, whereas by the sea yf the wind serued, their naule myghte w<sup>ith</sup> in five dayes arrive in the Romaine haven, & by theyr beinge so nere at hand, putte the Romaines in certaine hope & comfort. For he had heard of thunfortunate mischance of his captaines, & knewe of the losse of the come that was sent out of Sicill, wherebpon he considered in his minde the despaire & distresse y<sup>e</sup> the Romaines were in. Thys opinion was allowed in the counsell, & therbpon Belisarius setting forth fro Dirbachisi arrived at Hydrunt. The Gothes which were besieging of that towne being stricken w<sup>ith</sup> feare at the presence of Belisarius, brake by their  
siege



sege and flying from his sight retired  
to Bzunduse, the which is aboute two  
dayes iourney from Bidzunt. By and  
by they sent vnto Totilas aduertising  
him of Belisarius comming, beleuing  
that he would haue iourneyed by land.  
When Totilas heard that, forthwith  
he putte himselfe & his armie in a rea-  
dinesse to goe meete hym. But when  
he vnderstoode that Belisarius went  
by sea, he addressed hymselfe whollye  
to withstande hym aboute the Citie of  
Rome, inesppecially makinge proui-  
sion that nothing mighte be conueyed  
into the Citie to theym that were be-  
sieged, by the Ryuer Tyber. For the  
accomplishment whereof he deuised  
this practise. He chose a place aboute  
eleue miles of from Rome where the  
Ryuer Tyber is narrowest, & there he  
laid ouer long beames from thoneside  
to thother in maner of a bydge at eche  
ende whereof he buylded a Tote of  
Timber, & dyed a long yron chaine by  
the bydges side, at the endes whereof  
be

## Of the watre of the

Belisarius cometh to Potentia for the rescowring of Rome.

The good successe of John against the Gothes.

Cannas.

he made two bastiles the whiche & the  
aforesaid towres he manned with souldiers to defend the bridge. In þe meane while was Belisarius come to the Romaneyn haven. And haupnge sette hys men a land, tarped for John & tharmie that was with him. The Romaines knowynge of hys comminge, endured all their extremityes with better courage vppon hope of rescowre. John after the departure of Belisarius, hauing cut ouer the narrow seas, had inuaded the Gothes looking for nothing lesse, and haupnge putte theym to flyghte, wyth greate slaughter pursued them, & at the first assault worne Bzunduse. Then hauinge reconciled the people of Calabrye & broughte them again to fauour theemperour, wch many faire promises made vnto the, he departed from Bzunduse, & after v. remouings came to Canusiū, the which towne he also brought in subiectiō. Not far from Canusiū is þe vilage of Cannas, where the notable battell was fought

foughte betwene Hanniball and the  
Romaines. In this place one Tullian  
the sonne of Menant a man of greate  
name & authoritie amonge þe Lucans  
came to John declaring to him that the  
Lucanes & Brutians had taken parte  
w<sup>th</sup> his enemyes not of theyr owne ac-  
cord, but compelled by the displeasures  
doone to theym by the Imperialles.

Wherefore yf the Emperour woulde  
entreate them frendly & gently, the peo-  
ple wold willingly retorne vnder his o-  
bedience. John loading him w<sup>th</sup> com-  
mendations & thanks promised hym  
greate rewards, & afterwarde bled his  
helpe to his great comoditie & further  
aunce. At such time as Totilas hard of  
Johns approach, he sent a crewe of hys  
hoysmen to Capua, commaunding the  
to keepe themselues close w<sup>th</sup>in the  
walles, and to make no shewe at all to  
theyr enemyes vntyll they were past,  
and then to followe the tayle of theyr  
host. What was to be done afterward  
he willed them to cast þe care vpon hym.

This

## Of the warre of the

This thing so greatly troubled, John; that for feare he should be entrapped by his enemies, he left of his iourney toward Belisarius, & turned himselfe toward the Byzutians and Lucanes. There was among the Byzutians a certaine Gothe, called Richemond sette there by Totilas w<sup>th</sup> an armie to kepe y<sup>e</sup> country in obedience, & to kepe the enterance betwene Scilla & Charibdis. Him did John sodainly assaile, and at the first brunt put hym to flight, and after great slaughter receiued the rest y<sup>e</sup> were lefte together w<sup>th</sup> their Captayne by composition. Hereupon al the Byzutians & Lucanes revolted from the Gotes to the emperor. Whiles John occupied himself in this sort, Belisarius looked daily for hym & was wonderfull sorry for his long tariens, greatly blamine John's cowardise; that he had not soughte againste the horsemen that were at Capua, inesppecially seing that he hymselfe had so notable a band of Horsemen of the Hunnes.

Wherby

whereby he might easily have come  
through danger his enemies heaves;  
and heeded not to have turned backe a  
gaine so shamefully. These and suche  
other things byd Belisarius fynde  
faulte with. But it booteth hym not to  
complayne, for John had taken up bys  
standing in Appulia, and there deter-  
mined to abyde, mynding nothing lesse  
then to goe to Rome. Belisarius ther-  
fore fearyng least the besieged shoulde  
thynke themselves abandoned, and  
through despair shold chaunce to mis-  
carry, determined to succour them by  
Winter, for bys power was not so great  
that he was able to encounter with his  
enemies upon the land: and therefore  
he trusted rather to bys pollicie and to  
the aid so: the succouring of y towne.  
Upon this thought he bestyde hym  
gate two hundred of those kind of ship-  
pes which the Grekes call Bombardes,  
these shippes haue walles of timber on  
euery syde with toppes in places con-  
uenient to let oute arrowes and other  
R. J. weapons

Belisarius pro-  
uision for the  
rescowing of  
Rome.

## Of the warre of the

weapons at the enemie. Agaynst the  
 brydge and other thynges that were set  
 to stoppe hym upon the river, he made  
 thys deuyse: he set two shypes vpon the  
 streame fastened surely together wth  
 barres & crowes of yron, vpon the same  
 he buylded a towler of tymbre, some-  
 what hygher then the towlers that wer  
 buylded at the endes of the brydge by  
 hys enemyes. Whē these thyngs were  
 in a redynesse, he caused the **Pro**madēs  
 to be fraughted with corne & other suste-  
 nance to be conueyed to Rome, man-  
 yng them with the stoutest and val-  
 antest souldiers that he had. Comman-  
 dyng all the residue to goe on foote by  
 the rivers syde, & to drawe the shippes  
 wth the towler. Wth his nauie furni-  
 shed & decked in thys wyse he set for-  
 warde agaynst hys enemyes. He hym-  
 selfe enterng into one of the **Pro**ma-  
 des sayled forwēt, and the rest fol-  
 lowed hym in order, hys footemen al-  
 so went by hym vpon the ryght hande.  
 Further

Belliſſimo  
 uſion for the  
 telownd  
 Rome

further  
 1. 25

Furthermoꝛe he sente to Rome unto  
 Bellos, that he shoulde yssue out at the  
 very same tyme & kepe the enemyes as  
 much occupied as he could. But Bel-  
 las dyd neyther that noꝛ yet any thing  
 els, that was to any purpose during al  
 that siege. Belisarius naue being de-  
 ked in suche sorte as I haue tolde you,  
 went by the streame. Neyther dyd the  
 Gothes mete them in any place, but  
 kepte themselves quietly wythin theyꝝ  
 bulwarkes. When the shippes came  
 nere þe bydge there they founde a trope  
 of their enemyes and one bassile set at  
 the tone end of the chayne, the whiche  
 Belisarius souldiers wonne at þe firste  
 assault, & so takinge awayne the chayne  
 proceeded to the bydge. Where began a  
 curste fraye, the Gothes endeavouring to  
 defend the bydge, and the souldiers of  
 Belisarius to wyne it. For þe Gothes  
 yssuing fro both þe towres at eche end  
 of þe bydge, fought very baliantly. At  
 gayne the souldiers drawyng the shyp-  
 pes hard to the bydge, dyd beate the



Of the batte of the  
Gothes and woulde not suffer them to  
stand vpon it. In the meane while Be-  
lisarius caused the Wyppes wherein the  
tower of tynter was, to be brought as  
nere the tower of his enemyes as could  
be. And when they came hard to it he  
commaunded the beffells of byrnstone  
(whiche he had hanged in the toppes of  
hys tower for the same purpose before)  
to be set on fyre, and to be caste downe  
vppon the towre of hys enemyes, the  
which being done, the fyre lighting vpon  
the tower of hys enemyes, burned  
it vp and al the Gothes that were with-  
in it. There were not lesse then two  
hundredes that perished in þe fyre among  
whom was the Captayne of the holde  
hymselfe, such a man of hys handes as  
was not among all the Gothes agayn.  
Wherevpon the souldiers assailling the  
reast of the Gothes more boldly and  
fierly, compelled them to geue backe,  
wherby they wonne þe byrge, þe which  
forthwith they purposed to haue bea-  
uen downe, and with their whole dete-



## Of the warre of the

on occasion, depart out of the towne but  
kepe hymselfe within it and defende it  
only. Now at such tyme as Belisarius  
had set hys enemyes towne on fyre (as  
we have declared before) by & by came  
certayne to the towne of Doxua; and  
whereas the historie was notable of it  
selfe, they reported it farre greater then  
it was in dede. At the which tydings  
Isaac leaping for ioy & exulting hym-  
selfe in hys plaine conceits, like a mad  
beelzebub quite forgetting what Belisa-  
rius had sayd vnto hym, commaunded  
hys men to arme themselves, & in thys  
sodayne heat & ettahie waiting ouer  
hys night to invade hys enemyes that  
kept their standing on the other syde of  
the riuer, ranne vpon them not farre  
from the towne of Doxua. Though his  
sodayne assaulte at the first encounter  
he put them to flight. Yet betwixt anon  
after, hys enemyes gathering them-  
selves together and encouraging one an-  
other, returned effronter vpon hym &  
hauing slayne a great sorte of his sould-  
iers, to coole hys fyre madnesse, toke  
him

hent prisoner. Immediately hereupon  
certaine boilemen broughte word to  
Belisarius that his enemies had taken  
Isaac prisoner. With which tydings  
Belisarius beinge streken to the heart,  
demanded not one tooke of his sta-  
ger where or in what case, but miscom-  
dring that his enemies had taken  
Portua, and bene Lordes of his wife  
& all that euer he had, he was so deeply  
streken with such an inward sorrow,  
y<sup>e</sup> he was not able to speake. And there-  
upon turninge backe agayne, he retired  
with his name & his souldiers in all  
haste that mighte be, breuely determy-  
ninge eether to rescouer y<sup>e</sup> towne while  
the matter was but newly begonne, &  
his enemies had yet scarcely settled  
themselves, or els to die in y<sup>e</sup> battell. By  
this meanes y<sup>e</sup> victorie which he had as  
good as godde hypped out of his handes.  
But whē he came to Portua & sawe y<sup>e</sup>  
towne safe & himself decreaned through  
light credite & mistakinge of y<sup>e</sup> message,  
he toke so great sorrowe for it, y<sup>e</sup> he fell  
sicke and was fayne to keepe his bed  
King. and

did now and  
to observe  
some further  
action

did now and  
to observe  
some further  
action

The worthie  
rewarde of  
wilful rashe-  
nesse.

and besides that, he was taken with a  
soze and dangerous feuer, which held  
hym long tyme ere he coude be ryd of  
it. I assure the author of all this mischief  
was by the commaundement of Toti-  
las put to death in prison, in reuenge-  
ment of the death of Moderiche Cap-  
taine of the garrison, whiche had dyed  
of a wound taken in the foresaid battel.  
For by this tyme had Totilas quite  
chaunged that gentlenesse whiche he  
had pretended in the begynnyng of his  
reigne, into statelynesse and crueltie.  
Whereby eyther because his prosperous  
successe made hym forget hymselfe, or  
ells because his gentlenesse being but  
feined at the begynning, could not con-  
tynge. I assure you he would speake so  
bitterly of people of Rome, the very  
terror therof was an occasion that they  
endured the famyne more obstinately  
then they would haue done, because e-  
uery man was afrayed of his outrage-  
ous crueltie. Therefore as long as euer  
there was any hope of helpe at Belisa-

The miserable  
estate of  
Rome.

thus hand, the people of Rome beyond  
their power & (to say the truth) beyond  
bondes of manhood and nature, endu-  
red the famine. For to omit other things,  
even the flesh of horses, asses, and  
mules were deynyt delicacies at that  
tyme in Rome, they thought they had  
sped well that coulde get either dogges  
or myre or such other unclean beasts  
to fede on: Other some wer glad to cate  
all kynde of herbes, even suche as the  
brute beasts would not haue touched,  
and diuerse lyued by rootes and barkes  
of trees. But when they sawe there  
was no hope of helpe, then turning to  
teares and lamentation, some fordyd  
themselves, and some stealing out in  
night attempted to decrease the watche  
of their enemies. Many also starved for  
hunger and want of foode within their  
own houses, & neuer came out of their  
dores. Whyle the City stood in this  
lamentable and piteous estate, foure  
hundred soldiers conspyred to betray  
it to the enemye these soldiers wardeo

Rome is be-  
trayed.

## Of the warre of the

at the gate Celimontana, commonly called Asindria; wher after the tyme they were fully resolved w<sup>th</sup> the matter, did let the felmes downe the wall by a lyne, & went straight vnto Lotilas promysing to betraye h<sup>e</sup> Ciste into his hands. Lotilas encouraging them w<sup>th</sup> promyse of great rewarde; sent certayne of hys men w<sup>th</sup> the to viewe the place & to consider whyther the thyng they had promysed, were possible to be done or no. The Maurians leaueing the to the walles went by agayne in their syghte by the same lyne that they ascended downe. And so whē the experience of the matter had geue sufficient credite, Lotilas at h<sup>e</sup> nyght appoynted to the accomplisshment of the myschiefe, commaunded hys hoste to be readie in armour about hys by one of the clocke after mydnyght. The whiche beyng done, he sent certayne of his men before to get by by the lyne, and he hymselfe following closely after with the reast of hys armye, stayed a litle from the gate. They that were



were sent by Totilas, were according  
to conuente beethorne hym and the  
fraylours, yaluen up the walles, from  
whence they proceeded forthwith to  
the gate and with axes cut it open. To-  
tilas hauing by thys meanes entered  
into Rome, kept his armye still about  
hym at the gate, not suffering any of  
his men to ronne into the Citie, but  
kept them together with hym untill it  
was daye, sodaynly there sprang a  
noise aboute that parte of the towne,  
that the enemye was gotten within the  
walles, & thereupon ensued a wonder-  
full feare euey ma beginning to flye.  
Whiche as fled wente out at those gates  
that were farthest fro the place where  
the enemye entered. Many also both of the  
nobilitie and of the commonalty toke  
sanctuarie in the Churches. At one  
as it was daye the enemyes ranne  
through all the Citie, and without any  
respece slew as many as came in their  
waye.

Totilas

The sackyng  
of Rome.

## Of the warre of the

Totilas marching fro Lateran where  
 he had stode al nyght, went through the  
 Citie to Saint Peters as it had bene  
 to perfoyme hys vowe, accompanied  
 with traynes of most cruell and bloody  
 butchers, which with their naked swor-  
 des bathed in blood, slew all that en-  
 came in their way without regarde of  
 any person, haupng in this sorte swept  
 through the myddest of the Citie from  
 the one end to the other, when he came  
 into the Vatican. vnto the portche of  
 Saint Peters. Pelagius of whom we  
 made mention before, fearing to ap-  
 proache into presence, rauished in hys ap-  
 parell accustomed in solempne ceremo-  
 nies, and holdyng the Testamente of  
 Christ in hys hande, kneled humblye  
 downe on hys knees, & sayd: O hyng I  
 beseeche thee spare thy humble suppli-  
 antes. At that woorde Totilas dysdai-  
 fully caste a proude loke vpon hym, say-  
 ing: comest thou nowe to me Pelagi-  
 us to make supplication? Yea quen  
 nowe (qu Pelagius) sithens it is the wil  
 of

Pelagius ma-  
 keth supplica-  
 tion for hys  
 Citizens.

304  
 200810

of God to make this word & spall & uer me. And therefore my soueraine Lord haue mercy upon thy seruants. Therewithall þe wrath of Totilas was assuaged, insomuche that he made proclamation þe fco thenceforth there shold not any person be stricke with þe sword but that there shold be respecte from daughter & bloudshed. And euen he gaue commaundement, that no gentile woman were she mayde, married, wife or wydowe, shold be despyled, þe which he caused to be obserued with great seruilitie. And the goodes of the Romaynes he gaue for a pray to his soldiers, geuyng straigh charge that no mā shold be so bolde as to touch their bodies. When myndyng to pull down the courages of the Gothes, puffed up with pryde for thys victoꝝe, he summoned them together the next day & made this oration vnto them. Is there any of you my companions in armes (as be) that beholdyng so great alterations as haue chaficed within these fewe yeres,

The Oration  
of Totilas to  
hys men of  
warre.

deade & th

Of the Warre of the  
71  
breadeth not the clearye of mannes  
state. And is not able to coniecture  
whereupon and wherefore all these al-  
terations & changes haue happened.  
I will not speake of Rome, somtyme  
the Ladye of the whole worlde, which  
now is fallen into your hands. For she  
hath suffered many myschaunces which  
were done so longe agoe that they are  
not now to be recounted, and this is  
not the first ruine that hath happened  
vnto her. Wherefore I had rather  
put you in remembrance of our owne  
affaires. What thyng was there of  
grater power and strength before these  
warres then the nation of the Gothes  
through out all Italye? It sent into the  
field two hundred thousande fighting  
men, thoroughly furnished with ar-  
mour, weapons, artillerie, horses,  
viallles, golde and silver. It helde  
in possession all Italye, Sicill, Corsica,  
Sardinia, and Dalmatia. Who would  
haue beleued it had bene possible for  
seven

seven thousande Grekes (for there came no more into Italy at the fyrr) to have subuerted so great a power: And what shall we say of the same Grekes: when they had in manner brought all in subiection to them: and helde all as Lordes and conquerers: woulde any man haue thought that you being but a selue and broughte almoste to beggerie, shoulde haue recovered Italy out of the handes of them being twentye thousand men, considering that at that tyme ye were not able to make aboue foure thousand horsemen: and had not a towne lefte you in all Italy more then Pompeiuron, & \* Carnissum: woulde any man haue thought that euer ye shoulde haue taken Rome the head of the worlde: the whiche Altigis was not able to subdue with lesse two hundred thousand me in a whole yeres besiegement: surely countynge these thynges are very great and not a litle to be wondered at.

\* Now called  
Tecuizo.

in the year 1527. the  
city of Rome was sacked  
by the Spaniards.

## Of the battell of

Hobobek If we liste to consider & marke  
 them; the causes of these alterations  
 are most manifest & apparant. For as  
 long as the Gothes executed Justice &  
 bled equitye, so long their power flour-  
 ished, their estate prospered, their mat-  
 ters went forward, & whatsoeuer they  
 toke in hand had good successe, But as  
 soon as they were once led awry through  
 covetousnesse, then byed there pride  
 growde among them, the rose there in-  
 ward debate, then one soughte to cut  
 anothers throte, then sprang up secret  
 treason, through which they brought  
 themselves to utter ruine & decaye. A-  
 gaine whe these contagious malables  
 were passed out of you into your captaines  
 of Justinian, through your audience-  
 ment you easily overcame the. Where-  
 fore if you weye & consider these things  
 wel, ye have no cause at all to be proude  
 of this victory, but rather oughte to  
 blyss God & to feare the mutabilitie of  
 fortune. For ye must understand that  
 all Empire & power is easily forgone,  
unless

Colles from  
 44. 1011011

onlesse they be maintayned by Justice  
pollicie, and payntstakinge. For my  
companiones in armes, know ye this &  
believe it so: a certaintie, that the grea-  
test parte of your labour is yet behind.  
For it is a harder matter to kepe thin-  
ges gotten, then to gette them, For as  
much as in gettinge often tymes the  
rewardes of the possession furthereth  
a man more then his owne prowesse.  
But to kepe thynges gotten, no man  
is able without his owne prowesse and  
pollicie. Thus muche spake Totilas  
at that tyme & the Gothes did great-  
lye commend the wysdomme of to-  
bynge.

¶ The xii. Chapter.

¶ The bytter wordes of Totilas to the Ro-  
maines, and the quarrell of a noble woman  
accused of treason. Totilas sendeth Am-  
bassadours with letters to the Emperour,  
at whose returne he desaceth Rome and  
leaveth it vterly desolate.



The talke of  
rotilas to the  
Romaines.

## Of the booke of the

**A**fter this he called the Romaines  
before him and greatlie repproued  
their vnthankefullnesse & misde-  
meanour. In as much as they being in  
subiection vnder Odoacer, & deliuered  
from his tyranny by meane of Theo-  
derich & the Gothes, at whose handes  
they had receiued so great benefites as  
they theym selues coulde scarce haue  
wished, through the whiche they had  
bene greatly enriched & had lyled ma-  
ny yeres in great tranquillitie, ryghte  
happye yf they coulde haue sene when  
they were well, now in the ende wyth-  
out any wronge or displeasure offered  
to them, had contrarie to their othe &  
allegeans reuolted to the Grekes, men  
of all other most vaine & withoute ey-  
ther manhood or prowesse. Who im-  
mediatly vpon their arriual being be-  
sieged by Vitiges durst neuer shewe  
their heades in the open field, but lur-  
king within walls and there starving  
themselves for hunger, aboode all the  
dishonour that might be. Who after  
the

the tyme they were made lordes of the  
 Titles, not through their owne man  
 hoode, but through treason & decepte,  
 fylled all places wyth tollgatherers,  
 Dollers, and Whontaters: who wyth  
 maruelous crueltie compelled the Ci  
 tyes & people of Italye to the payment  
 of those tributes, whiche had bene for  
 geyuen them & clearly released many  
 peres befoze by Theoderich & thother  
 Kynges of the Gothes. Who to satisfie  
 the insatiable conetousnesse of the  
 Emperour their Master, called as  
 well the people as the magistrates, to  
 a straight accompt of such thynges, as  
 they had taken charge of vnder the said  
 kings. Tell me therfoze ye Romaines  
 (if he) whether ye euer suffered any  
 harme by the Gothische Kynges: And  
 tell me againe if euer these Brethlings  
 byd you any good: And not rather  
 more displeasure to you beyngs theyr  
 frends, then to vs their enemies: A vi  
 cious & wicked kinde of people, able to  
 serue to no purpose, but to forgynging of

221 Of the boate of the  
 leasings : whereas on the contrarie  
 part the Gothes were borne & brought  
 by wronge you in Italye, and yet you  
 haue fet more by straungers & aliens  
 then by your owne countreyemen & ac-  
 quaintance, so much are ye degenera-  
 ted out of kind, hating whom ye ought  
 to loue, desyring new thyngs & lothing  
 your owne quietnesse, like restie iades  
 which through ouer long standinge in  
 & to much pampering become colticke  
 & full of euil touches. Wherefore seing  
 you haue done these thynges both con-  
 trarie to your dutye & allegiance, and  
 contrarie to your owne profyte, looke  
 as you haue hitherto bene worthele  
 punished, so shall you also be hereaf-  
 ter. With these wordes he dismissed  
 the Romaynes voyde of all good hope.  
 About the same tyme was pleaded the  
 case of a noble woman called Justini-  
 ana. It was laid to her charg y she had  
 caused y images of kinge Theoderich  
 to be broken & defaced in reuengemēt  
 of her husband Boetius and of her fa-  
 ther

A noble wo-  
 man accused  
 for defacing  
 the kynges  
 ymages.

father Symmachus whom Theoderich had put to death. The enforcement for defacing of hymages was supposed to be true, yet howbeit she was thought to be to be helde excused, in as much as her Just sorrows provoked her therunto, for bitaule it was manifestly knowen that those worthy personages, were wrongfully put to death. In consideration wherof, Totilas requested the woman, & preserved her from the violence of the Gothes. Afterward he purposed to sende an Ambassade to Justinian. The Ambassadors were the sojennamed Pelagius, & one Theodose an Orator of Rome. These men byd Totilas bynde with a great othe, to doe bys meessege faithfully, and to retourne to hym into Italye with as much speede as myghte be. The end of their commission was, to declare unto the Emperour & if he wold admitte hym the gothes into the number of his friends he wold saue the cite of Rome, & wold wyzenper ad him with a strong power like

The request  
of Totilas  
-made by  
her.

An Ambassad  
sent from ro-  
tilas to them  
perour.

102  
**O**f the warre of the  
a faithfull friend in all his voyages and  
warres. But yf he would rather con-  
tinue warres against them, he would  
make Rome even wyth the grounde.  
For he mynded not to trouble himself  
wyth the keeping of it whyle he should  
be occupied aboute other warres, nor  
yet to leaue it vppeto hys enemyes.  
Furthermore he wrote a letter to Gu-

The tenour  
of Totilas let-  
ter to them-  
perour.

stian, the tenour wherof was this.  
What hath bene doone aboute the  
Citye of Rome I thinke you knowe  
well enoughe. The occasion why we  
send Ambassadors vnto you is this.  
We wouet to be an assonement wyth  
you, and you wyth vs, lyke as were  
pore noble predecessours Anastasius  
the Emperour of Rome and Theoderic  
kinge of the Gothes. Whose mu-  
tual concord & agreement both cau-  
sed great tranquillitye and quietnesse  
of those tynes, and also greatly be-  
nefited themselves. If therefore you  
can fynde in your harte to doe as they  
doo, I wyll doo my selfe accepte you for  
my

my part, and you shall haue me and  
my Gothes at commaundement to  
helpe you in all your warres. But if  
you be otherwise minded, you shall  
vnderstande by oure Ambassadors  
what shall be the sequelle. Wherupon  
the Ambassadors sayed in-  
to Grece, buryng whole goyng and  
commyng. Totilas abode still at  
Rome. Belisarius laye all the while  
at Bizanta, broughte to deathes doore  
both by sickness and by Rome. In the  
meane tyme John perswaded in his do-  
mings, & altered many things among  
the Luitanes and Buthians. By mea-  
nes wherof Totilas also was com-  
pelled to sende amonge the Luitanes  
and to renewe the warre. It was not  
long after but that he was certified of  
the Emperours answere. For at suche  
tyme as the Ambassadors commyng  
before Iulian had by the despyered  
the Kinges letters, and afterwarde  
declared their Commission, manye  
intercession and supplicatio, making

the Emperours  
an swere to  
the demands  
of Totilas,

the Emperours  
an swere to  
the demands  
of Totilas,

## Of the warre of the

the Citie of Rome then standing in so great leaperdie, they coulde gette none other aunswere at the imperours hand but that Belisarius was in Italy, to whose will and discretion he had committed the affayres of that countrey. When Morilas heard that perceining it was don for none other purpose then to disappoint him of his desyre, & moreouer takinge displeasure at Johns doings whiche had made warre vppon him sitting still in quiet & abyding for the returne of his Ambassadors sent to entreate for peace, he took counsell to rase the Citie of Rome. Wherevpon rising vp with maruelous crueltie in sundry places he beate the walles downe to the grounde, to the mountenances of the third part of the Circuit of the whole Citie. What done he set the Capitoll on fire. All was on a lighte fire about the market about saubura, & about the holy strete. The hill Quirinalis smoked, the hill Auentinus glittered with flames & the noise of the fallinge of the

The vtter sack  
king and de-  
solation of  
Rome.



of the houses was heard every where.  
While the Citie was thus burninge,  
the inhabitants with their wyues and  
childezen, were thowen out of their na-  
tive soyle, hauing not so much libertie  
as to bewaile their owne miseries. All  
the people and the common sort he dis-  
persed throughte the towines of Cam-  
panie. But he keppe still aboute hym  
the Senatours and noble men for hos-  
tages. After this he departed oute  
of Rome with all hys whole ar-  
mie, leauing it vtterly disolate,

in so much that there re-  
mained not anye man  
or woman  
in it.



**Thus endeth the thirde  
Booke.**

# The fourth booke

of Leonard Stetine, contey-  
ning the warres in Italy  
against the Gothes.

The first Chapter, how an

Totilas chaseth Iohn Vitalian from place  
to place. Belisarius repulseth Rome and  
geueth notable and bloody repulses to the  
Gothes attempting to let him of hys pur-  
pose. And prouideth for the saue keeping  
of the same.



When Totilas departed  
from Rome, he set a crew  
of souldiers against the  
citie Portua in a place  
called Algidone, to the  
entet that Belisarius souldiers shuld

The shameful  
flight of iohn  
Vitalian.

not worke any thing in his absence, &  
with the reste of his armie he went a-  
gainste Iohn into Calabre. As sone  
as Iohn heard of his comminge, he a-  
bandoned vppon him and ranne  
hys waye lyke a coward, not stayinge  
in

In any place vntill he had recovered to  
Hydrunt whiche is the furthest towne  
of all Calabria. By meanes wherof  
when Totilas came in those quarters,  
he quickely recovered the Lucanes,  
Brutians, and Calabrians whollpe  
saunge Hydrunt. The same season  
Spolet revolted from the Gothes.  
There was nothynge kept of it but  
onelye the Castell, for Totilas had be  
fore tyme ouerthrowen the walles of  
the towne. The authour of this re-  
uolting was one Martian of Constan-  
tinople, who beyng one of the keepers,  
conspyred with eyghtene of the sol-  
dyers, and hauynge slayne the Cap-  
taine of the piece, yelded it vpp to Be-  
lisarius. Aboute the same tyme al-  
moste was Tarent repayred, whereas  
before, it had beene forsaken and left  
desolate. It was repayred by the Ca-  
labrians and other people that were  
driven out of theyr owne dwellynge  
by the warres. They were not able  
to build it of like bignes as it had bene  
in

The repai-  
ring of tarent

## Of the waste of the

in tymes passe. **W**hat takinge one place  
of it buttynge vppon the hauen entlo-  
fed on bothe sydes wyth the sea, they  
easily fortified the accesse vnto it from  
the mayne lande. **A**tilas havyng  
brought vnder hys subiection all the  
townes of Lucanye and Calabrie sa-  
uyng Hydunt, determynd to de-  
parte thence, and therebpon lea-  
uyng a garrison of souldyers at the  
Cytie Atheruse, wyth the reste of hys  
armye marched towarde Rauenna,  
In the meane whyle Belisarius be-  
yng recovered of hys longe com-  
pelled Age, tooke in hande a bolde  
adventure, and (as manye a manne  
woulde haue thought) a rashe, the  
whyche notwithstandynge in the ende  
proued a couragious and laudable en-  
terpryse. **H**e determynd to take  
vppon the sodayne and to fortifye the  
Cytie of Rome, lyinge at that tyme  
waste and desolate. **W**herbpon he  
myng this purpose crete to hymself,  
he left a fewe souldyers at Porina

The repaïing  
of Rome by  
Belisarius.

for defence of the towne, & w<sup>th</sup> al the  
pow<sup>er</sup> he could make h<sup>er</sup>se, (no man  
e<sup>ither</sup> of h<sup>is</sup> owne or of h<sup>is</sup> enemies  
mistrusting whereaboutes he went)  
tooke the Citie of Rome and w<sup>th</sup> a  
wonderfull celeritie wente in hand  
w<sup>th</sup> repay<sup>ing</sup>e and fortifyinge it a  
gayne. And bycause the walles in di  
uers places were beaten downe to the  
hard ground, he fylled v<sup>pp</sup>e parte of  
theym w<sup>th</sup> roughe worke, and cut  
deepe dyches before the walles, and  
caste v<sup>pp</sup>e a Rampe the whiche he  
fensed w<sup>th</sup> Trunkes of trees faste  
ned in the ground by the rotes wound  
one w<sup>th</sup> in another, w<sup>th</sup> the sharpe  
endes v<sup>pp</sup>warde. And for the more  
strength of the wall newely repay  
red he buylded tow<sup>ers</sup> and bulwarks  
of timber. The w<sup>h</sup>ch things throug<sup>h</sup>  
the earnest labour and willyngnes of  
h<sup>is</sup> souldiers, he furnished it in thre  
and twentye dayes. And shippes came  
continuallye from Portua laden w<sup>th</sup>  
corne and other victualles.

And

The

The Count  
of the  
the  
the

## Of the boate of the

The Citizens of Rome whereof there  
stayed a greate number in the towne  
nere aboutes, hearynge that their Ci-  
tye was repayred, were wonderfull  
desyrous to retourne into theyr native  
Countrie, and that in especiall be-  
cause there was plentye of corne there,  
wth scarcettie whereof they were pin-  
ched in other places. As sone as To-  
tilas had worde of this, forthwth all  
other matters sette a parte, he made  
haste towarde Rome. Belisarius  
was not able to hange vpp the gates  
of the Citie before hys enemyes were  
come. For he had not so good store of  
Carpenters to repaier them in so short  
tyme. The Gothes the fyrste daye of  
theyr comynge encamped themsel-  
ues not farre from the Citie agaynst  
the gate Salaria. The next morning  
by the rising of the sunne, wth great  
noyse and hurly burly they marched  
to the assault. Belisarius placed all  
hys tallest and hardiest men at the gate  
the rest he set vpon the walles & in the  
bnt

The Gothes  
assault Rome  
and are re-  
pulsed,

but toke them, commaundinge them to  
beate thei enemyes downe. The en-  
counter was hebeement and whote on  
bothe partes. For the Gothes came  
thither of sette purpose to haue worne  
the Towne at the fyrste pushe. But  
when they sawe better defence made  
then they looked for, they were in such  
a furre and suche a rage, that they  
ranne desperatly vppon they enemyes  
lyke madde men, and stryuinge bradu-  
uiledlye to gette vppe, were beaten  
downe and kyllen withoute mercye.  
It was wonder to see bothe earnestlye  
and desperatlye it was foughte on  
bothe sydes that daye. For the assault  
beganne in the mornynge and ended  
not vntyll nyghte. After that it war-  
ed darke the Gothes retyned into  
they Tentes. But the souldyers of  
Belisarius partelye kepte they stan-  
dynges vppon the walles and bulwar-  
kes as they had beene placed by hym,  
and partelye warved at the Gates.



221 **Of the battell of the**

And to the intent the enemye should  
not sodaynely come vppon theym  
in the night and take theym vnwares,  
he caused a greute caste of Bristles  
and Brambles to be layde before the  
Gates. The next daye the Gothes  
approched to the Citye in lyke sorte  
as they had doone before, and Be-  
lisarius and his armye made lyke re-  
sistens. But when the assaulte war-  
ed to longe, the souldyers that kepte  
theyr standynge at the Gate, pined  
oute with helpe and encounterynge with  
the Gothes hand to hand, at length  
putte theym to fyghte on that fyde  
and with manye woundes dyde  
theym farre from the Gate. And  
so was that assaulte ended. After-  
warde when they hadde bestowed  
manye dayes in heallinge theyr wound-  
es and repayynge theyr armour, the  
Gothes aduanced agayne to the as-  
saulte of the Citye.

Belisarius hauyng before well harted  
and encouraged hys souldiers, leauyng  
neuerthelesse a cōuenient number by  
pon the walles and in the Towers, led  
thē out at the gate. There was a whot  
and an eager battell fought hard at the  
gate, in the which when as Totilas his  
standerbearer was stricke starke dead  
from hys horse with a sprace, and the  
stander ouerthrowē, there was much  
preasyng aboute it frō both sydes. The  
Gothes stryuyng to saue their stander  
leasse they shoulde be dyshonored, and  
h souldiers of Belisarius endeuoring  
to obtayne the honour of wyunnyng the  
same. At laste the skymme grewe to  
thys issue, that the Gothes reconered  
their stander, & the souldiers of Belli-  
sarius had the bodye of the stander-  
bearer, sayyng his lyft hand which the  
Gothes dyd cut of for spyght that their  
enemyes shoulde not haue it, because  
there was a ring of golde vpon it. This  
done, Totilas perceauyng that his at-  
tempt was in vayne, blewe to h retreat

A notable re-  
pulse geuen  
to the Gothes  
by Belisarius,

## Of the warre of the

and the nexte daie after wente bys  
waie vnto Tybur . For as I tolde  
you before he helde that Citie , and  
hauing maruelously fortified the castle  
therof vfed it as a Camp agaynst the  
Romaynes . The Romaynes to the  
entent they woulde not bee molested  
by their sodayne inuasions from that  
syde , brake all the brydges on the ry-  
uer Anio . This ryuer Anio spryngeth  
amonge the Heruices , and runnyng  
downe from the hilles cutteth the  
playne betwene Tybur and Rome .  
It hath verry stepe bankes , and the  
chanell is so deepe of water that it can-  
not be passed . And therefore there  
were brydges made vppon it from all  
the principall wayes , as from the  
gates Salaria , Nomentana , and Mi-  
burtyna . These brydges being at  
that tyme cut of , there coulde no rodes  
be made a gaynst the Citie of Rome on  
that syde .

The

## The, ii. Chapter

¶ After the departure of the Gothes from Rome, Totilas in the nexte spring goeth to the syege of Peruse, during whose beyng there, John Vitalis attempteth many thinges in Capane to the great preiudice of the Gothes, wherewith Totilas being displeased goeth with such speede agaynst hym that he ouercameth hym before he heard of hys commyng, the Emperour sendeth another bande of men into Italye at whose commyng, Belisarius sailing towarde Tarent is driven by tempeste to land at Croton where for want of forage compelled to sende hys horsemen into the Countrey, through the negligence of the Capaynees looseth them. By meanes whereof he is fayne to sayle awaye into Sicill, during the which his absence Totilas besiegeth Rusce,

¶ **A**LTHOUGH the departure of the Gothes Belisarius caused the gates and the yron worke of them to be framed quietly, and when he had done, as though he had conquered the Citye agayne by force, he sente

L.ij.

the

## Of the warre of the

the keyes of it into Grece to the Emperoure Justinian . And thus ended the twelueyth yeare of thys warre. The nexte yeare following allone as the spryng came, Totilas set out of Tibur & marched towarde Veruse. The same Towne was even then alreadye besieged by another compaign of the Gothes . And when corne beganne to waxe scarce & other vittualles to fayle, Totilas went thither to the entent to kepe the towne stragghter, & to take awaye al hope of succour from the besieged. Whyle Totilas was occupied about the siege of Veruse, John takyng a vantage of hys beyng there & perceauyng that the Senators & noble men of Rome which Totilas had led prisoners wyth him were left in the townes of Campanie vnder the keepyng of hys souldiers, thought to wyne hymselfe a name by deliuering them out of their enemyes handes. Whereuppon he remoued out of Calabria with a troope of chosen hoysmen, neuer dyscontinuyng his

The doying  
of Iohn in  
Campanie.

his iourney night nor day until he came  
 into Campanie. Totilas mistrusting  
 as much, had appointed a strong band  
 of the Gothes thither. Till he they came  
 vnto Minturne they stayed & sent cer-  
 taine of their horsemen before to see  
 what was done in the towne. So it  
 fortuned that the Gothes the horsemen  
 whiche were sente before, chaunted to  
 light vppon John & his horsemen, be-  
 twene whō there was a sharpe encoun-  
 ter. In the which John getting the up-  
 per hand slewe many of them & wound-  
 ed many, and put the reaste to flight.  
 Through this discomfiture they that a-  
 bode behinde at Minturne were so dis-  
 couraged, & they fled also. By meanes  
 wherof John had leasure to lead away  
 whom he lysted at his pleasure. For  
 the towne of Campanie wer bruiualled  
 the Gothes hauyng lately before beate  
 them downe. So that John toke all the  
 Romayne prisoners that he founde in  
 euery towne & deliuered them out of  
 handes of the Gothes, conueying them

L.ij,

quite

Of the battell of the  
quyte awaye, all saying Clementine  
& Crestes of the which the one woulde  
not go awaye with hym, because he fea-  
red the Emperour whom he had offen-  
ded, & the other makinge excuse that he  
wanted horses, taried in doubt whether  
he might go or no. Howbeit there were  
not many Senators founde in Cam-  
paine, but very many of their wyues &  
daughters. For the men for the moste  
part the same nyght that the Citie was  
taken, followed the men of warre and  
fled with them to Portus. When Mo-  
tilas understode of these thynges that  
John had done, he was greatly moued,  
determinyng to be reuenged vpon him.  
And theruppon leauing part of his army  
at y<sup>e</sup> siege of Hieruse, he himselfe to the  
residue, made haste by great iourneys  
through y<sup>e</sup> countreies of y<sup>e</sup> Dicentes Mar-  
tes, & Deligues, into Appulia, & neuer  
ceased, untill, by crosseing the wayes at  
length he founde John in Calabrie wher  
sodainly setting vpon him, he put him &  
all his army to flight & toke hys tentes.

The great ce-  
leritie of Mo-  
tilas.

Port.



Notwithstanding as it chaunced, the  
 Gothes made no greate slaughter, by  
 reason it was nighte whe they assailed y  
 camp. By meanes wherof y souldiers  
 did easily escape & hide theselues in the  
 next mountaines. John & Arnulphe cap-  
 taine of y Crulians who also serued in  
 y warres with John, recovered out of y  
 chase vnto Hydrunt, & the souldiers af-  
 terward some one way & some another  
 resorted thither vnto the. Whys victorie  
 of Totilas dyd greatlye renoune his  
 name. For it was thought to be a nota-  
 ble matter, for a king to haue come fro  
 y walles of Peruse into Calabrie, and  
 y in so shorte space as a light iournyng  
 man could scarcely haue done, hymself  
 being not carped in a horselytter or a  
 charpte, but euen wyth as much paine  
 as the common souldier, on horsebacke  
 laden with his harnesse as other were.  
 Not longe after that battell, another  
 bande of souldiers sent from Iustinian  
 beganne to approche vnto Hydrunt.

For

Q  
 9  
 Gmff 88

## Of the warre of the

Thempour  
Edeth a new  
power into  
Italy.

For the Empour being moued with  
often letters from Belisarius, decla-  
ring the state of the warres & requesting  
ayde, determined to send a new power  
into Italy, & had written to Belisarius  
that he shoulde hve hym into Calabrie  
to receaue his souldiers & to make war  
agaynst hys enemyes there. Captaines  
of thys new armye were Valerian lea-  
der of the Armenians, & were leader  
of the Erulians. Belisarius bypon the  
receipt of the Empours letters and  
comandement, leauyng the reaste of  
hys armye at Rome & at Portua vnder  
the charge & gouernement of his Lieu-  
tenant Conon, with nyne hundred  
chosen souldiers, (whereof seven hun-  
dred were horsemen and two hundred  
footemen) toke shipping & made sayle to  
ward Calabrie. It was hys mynde to  
haue landed hys armye at Tarent, the  
which is two daies iourney dystant frō  
Hydrunt, & in the same place to haue as-  
sembled al the reaste of his power about  
hym. But by meanes of contrary winds  
be

he was compelled to land his men in  
the haven of Croton. For the violence  
of the tempest was such, that he could  
saye neither backward nor forward.  
Wherefore when he had landed his ar-  
my at Croton, soasmuch as there was  
not plenty of forage in those quarters,  
he was constrained to seporate his  
horsemen from his footemen. For he  
himself & his wyfe abode with his foot-  
men at Croton, to the entent to cal John  
with the reall of his power vnto hym,  
& commaunded his horsemen to go fur-  
ther into the countrie and to stay them-  
selues in the borders of the Turnies.  
For in so doyng they shuld easely come  
by al thyngs necessarye for themselves  
and for their horses, and shoud also be  
out of all daunger, soasmuche as the  
mountaynes of Lucanie thotying into  
the countrie of the Brutians, do make  
two valleyes, with narrowe enteran-  
ces into them. And not farre from one  
of the valleyes standeth on the sea coast  
a Castell of the Turnies called Ruspe,

*Robert  
Langton*

## Of the warre of the

a little above the whiche is the towne  
somewhat further from the water, situ-  
ate on a high ground, called Ruscian.  
The same towne did John kepe with a  
strong garrison of souldiers. Belisari-  
us therfore sent his souldiers into those  
borders, & made Captaynes over them  
one Phases a Spanyard a noble man  
of warre, & Barbaton a Thracian, co-  
maundynge them in any wyse to keepe  
well the entrances of y<sup>e</sup> halleyes. When  
these horsemen were come into those  
quarters, by chaunce they met with y<sup>e</sup>  
horsemen of their enemies, who Totilas  
had sent to attempt y<sup>e</sup> towne which (as  
I tolde you before) was kept by Johns  
men of warre. After it came to y<sup>e</sup> encoun-  
ter the souldyers of Belisarius albeit  
they wer fewer in number, yet they ea-  
sily ouercame their enemyes & slew a-  
bout two hundred of the. Afterwarde  
those y<sup>e</sup> abode still in that place, so far  
much as they wer the victours, and far  
fro the sight of their captaine, kept nei-  
ther order nor aray. But straying farre  
from

skirmish be-  
twene the im-  
periall & Go-  
thise horse-  
men.

from their standarde they passed not to  
kepe either watch or ward, or to send a-  
ny skowtes abroad, or to haue any skow-  
tes among the, nor yet to kepe þe streigh-  
tes at the entrance of the balley where  
they might easily haue kept out their e-  
nemie. Whereof when Totilas had  
vnderstanding he wente thither with  
three thousand horsemen and set vpon  
the ere they mistrusted any such thing.  
So he was passed those narrow  
streighes and the entrances of the val-  
ley, before that Belisarius horsemen  
heard of his commyng. Wherevpon  
beganne a great slaughter and discom-  
fite to be made of them. Phases and  
Barbation were the Captaynes. Of  
the whiche Phases with his troope of  
horsemen setting hymselfe agaynste  
Totilas, dyd maruells in Armes, how-  
beit at the lengthe he and all his men  
were slayne. Barbation with no  
mo but fyny companions onely escaped  
by flyght, the reast were eyther slayne  
or taken prisoners.

Belisarius lo-  
seth his horse  
men through  
neglegence of  
the captaynes,

Some

## Of the battell of the

Some there were that taking themselves to flight at the first beginning, escaped to Belisarius & carped hym tydings of that great slaughter. When Belisarius had lost hys horsemen, mistrusting that hys enemies wold come agaynst hym, he toke shipping in haste & greatly dismaide with sorowe, abandoning himselfe to the windes arrived the same daye at Messina in Sicill the which is from Croton about fourescore myles. Totilas hauing dispatched these matters & thereby disposed of power of hys enemyes, determined to besiege the towne of Ruscia. For in that towne wer three hundred horsemen placed there by John, & an hundred footmen sent lately thither by Belisarius. Moreover there were a great number of Italians both horsemen & footmen, which if they shoulde be besieged, it was none other lyke but they should want victualles ere it were long. In hope whereof Totilas besieged the towne.

Totilas besieged  
Ruscia,

The

The .liij. Chapter.

Conon Captayne of Rome is slayne of hys owne souldiers. Fortune afflicteth the Imperial, Totilas receaueth Ruscia & putteth Colaser Captayne therof to death. Antonia the wyfe of Belisarius entreateth the Emperour that her houlbande is called home our of Italy.

**A**Bout this tyme, the souldiers that Belisarius lefte at Rome, siewe their Captayne Conon in a rage because that by encroaching the corne pryncely into hys hand, he dayly raysed the pryce of the market. Upon the which sate they sent their messengers to the Emperour for pards of their trespassse asserfeining hym that onlesse he would graunt it, & mozeouer paye them their wages that was behinde, they wold deliue Rome vnto Totilas. For feare wherof the Emperour graunted them their whols request. They that were besieged at Colone Ruscia, being distressed woth scarcetie of corne, fel to communicatio

Conon Captain of Rome for hys couensoulesse is slayne of hys owne souldiers

with



## Of the warre of the

with Totilas, & toke a truce for a fewe  
dayes, promising to yelde vp the towne  
onlesse they were rescowed in þi meane  
tyme. Hereupon was preparatiō made  
by John, to rescowe them, & by Totilas  
to prohibite hym. In the meane season  
Belisarius was come out of Sicill, vnto  
Hydrunt & had receaued Valerian  
with the souldiers sent from the Em-  
perour, by meanes wherof he had a suf-  
ficient power. Neyther wanted he ship-  
pes to conuey them into the rescowe of  
hys complices. Therefore when al thin-  
ges were in a readinesse he embarked  
hys souldiers and sailed toward Rus-  
cie. They that were besyged seing the  
naue a farre of, (for the Citie standeth  
vpon a hygh ground & hath a large pro-  
spect into the sea) were so glad of it that  
they wolde not render the towne at the  
daye appoynted. It was not long af-  
ter but that there rose suche a tempeste  
that it despoiled the naue into sundrye  
places. The whiche afterwarde  
meeting all at Croton, set out a gayne  
from

The peruerse  
fittne of the  
imperialls.

from thence and made sayle to Ruscie.  
When the shippes approached nere the  
lande, Totilas commaunded hys men  
to arme them, & set themselves in array  
vpon the shoze willing them with their  
barres & arrowes to prohibite the na-  
uie from arriual. When the Grekes  
saw that, they were so sore afrayed of  
the daunger, that after they had houe-  
red a while their aboutes making pre-  
tence to arrive, at length despairing to  
do that they came for, they turned their  
shippes & went their wayes. After-  
warde as they were consultyng what  
was to be done for the safegarde of the  
that were besyged, it was determined  
that John & Valerian with y<sup>e</sup> horsemen  
& the reast of the armye shoulde go into  
the countrey of Picene, & there kepe as  
greate a wyre as they coulde, to the en-  
tent that Totilas shoulde be copelled to  
brenke vp his siege to succoure hys owne.  
And that Belisarius shoulde with hys  
nauie sayle vnto Rome, to appease  
the mutinie amonge the souldyers  
that

## Of the warre of the

that we spake of before, & to carry come  
thither to victual the towne. According  
to thys determination, John went by &  
by through Appulia and the Countrey  
of the Marpes to the Picentes by land.  
Valerian chose rather to goe by water:  
And so hauing embarked his souldiers  
he arriued at Aucona, & ioyned hymself  
with John. Yet notwithstanding for al  
thys Totilas dissolued not hys syege,  
but sending two thousand horsemen a-  
mong the Picentes to defend y<sup>e</sup> townes  
agaynst John and Valerian, he himself  
with the reast of hys armye continued  
hys syege about Ruscia. The besie-  
ged when victualles vtterly fayled thē,  
& that there remainned no hope of res-  
coue, sent one Deofer an Italian and  
Godilas a Thracian to Totilas, desyr-  
yng pardon and safetie of their liues.  
Whese men contrary to their expecta-  
tion found Totilas gentle and easie to  
be entreated. For he unpited y<sup>e</sup> breach  
of the truce to no man but one with the  
punishment of whom he sayd he wold  
be



be satisfied, & was contented to pardon  
all the residue. If they would serve  
him they should keep still all that came  
they had, and if they had rather goe  
some where elles they should depart  
every man with one garment. By this  
mediocr he receyved the towne, and af-  
ter that he had satisfied Colasus Cap-  
taine of the garrison to be whipped &  
strangled, (who was the occasion that  
the towne was not yielded according  
to covenant), he commaunded him to  
be putte to death. Wherby the rest he  
kept touch according to his promise.  
A great number of the men of warre  
(to the intent to save that they had) a-  
bode still wyth Totilas. Other some  
feeling theyr hope barne, & all that  
they had besides, went wyth one gar-  
ment unto Croton. The goodes of  
the townermen Totilas gave for a  
prize to his soldiers, commaun-  
dyng theyr badges to goe at liberty.  
About this tyme Antonia the wyfe  
of Belisarius wente to Constantinople

The punish-  
ment of Cola-  
sus for brea-  
king of pro-  
myle.

The wyfe of  
Belisarius go-  
eth to con-  
stantinople.

¶ Of the Datter of the  
 to sue to Theodora the Emperesse to  
 entreate that her husband mighte be  
 called home out of Italy. But when  
 she found that Theodora was decea-  
 sed a litle before, she went to them  
 perour her selfe and with much sute  
 earnestly entreated hym that her hus-  
 band mighte be called oute of Italye.  
 The Emperour request she easily gra-  
 nted, so much the rather because  
 the Emperour stood in greates feare  
 of warres in Parthia. Thus Beli-  
 sarius beyng called out of Italye retur-  
 ned into Grece almost yue yere after  
 he came thither last, not hauing had  
 altogether so good fortune in this his  
 latter biage as he had in his first. And  
 at his departure from Rome he lefte  
 three thousande of chosen souldyers  
 there in garrison vnder his gouernance  
 of his lieutenant Diogenes a man of  
 much wisdom & knowledge in feates  
 of armes. Anon after his departing  
 the Gothes toke by assault Rome which  
 they had so long tyme besieged.

The Emperour  
 also to him  
 - and so it  
 was to him  
 . . .

Belisarius is  
 called out of  
 Italye.

To showe  
 of his  
 . . .



# Of the portraict of the

Whereupon assembling a great power from all partes, when all things were in a readinesse, he came to Rome and besieged it. There were in garrison in the towne three thousand chosen souldiers with theyr Captaine Diogenes a man of singular ac-  
tivity, who by watching, working, and preventing in places convenient defended the Citie stoutly. In so much that the siege was prolonged, and the Gothes had none other hope to winne it but by starvingement. Duringe the siege aboute the Citie, Valerius the Bishoppe of Rome beyng as then at Constantinople, and with him many worthy men of Italy, made ear-  
nest sute to Justinian that he would send Helisarius agayne into Italy w<sup>th</sup> an insurable power to raise the siege before Rome, otherwise they decla-  
red that all was lye to fall to utter ruine. The same thing also requested Goding one that had bene Consull & was sent thither from the people of Rome

Sute made to  
the emperour  
for rescowing  
the cytye of  
Rome.

the cytye  
of Rome  
was  
the  
same



Hannas an Ambassadour: Justinian  
 made them answer, that he would not  
 wite well enough for the affairs of gene-  
 ly. Howbeit through his delaying & dy-  
 wing of day to day he did nothing  
 further. At length when he saw that  
 nothing would in him see time to time  
 he could not beise of the he benoised  
 & liberius one of the nobilitie of Rome  
 Captayne generall of the warres in  
 Italy, & at the begynnyng was very  
 where in the furniture thereof. That  
 with a while when other cares came  
 in his head he beganne to have chills  
 againe. And so both he and his son  
 tyme making preparation and some  
 tyme making delays the tyme passed  
 away. Rome with the means whyle  
 was happily besieged. For the  
 they havyng inuade the Wyche place  
 has kept them so close that nothing  
 could be conveyed in by the way  
 but in them that were besieged. And  
 to the intent Rome should not be  
 sent from anye place they had gotten

256

III. 14 .

into

the foreign  
 and  
 of  
 for the  
 of Rome

Rome is be-  
 sieged.



hundred, appointing the cyrie and the  
 minster how to bee taken when the night  
 pressed thus come; Wheras some few  
 they sent to. The second Barges had  
 upon the River Leber with many  
 pebbles in them, commanding them  
 to blowe uppe the bridge and to gette  
 as nere the wall as they coulde; and  
 whan they came there to blowe they  
 trumpetted as terribly as they coude.  
 The third he with his lance and  
 softie without noise or staye  
 lyde close from the gate before was  
 closed. All things happened accordyng  
 to his desire. The third in person  
 when they had come to the place ap-  
 pointed, with the terrible and so ap-  
 poynted of their trumpettes; strake the  
 drumme in such a feare that they be-  
 leved their enemies had bene there at  
 In so much that they flockt thither  
 from all partes of the Citty; and they  
 that watched in other places left their  
 standinges, and came runninge thither  
 ther fearfully.

Rome is 11.  
kea.

271 Of the posture of the  
paule tobyles enemy man resorted to  
that place and toke no heed to the  
nest, the traitours heing left alone  
broke open they gate and let Scythias  
wyth his army into the Cytie wher  
bypon immediately ensued slaughter  
as well of the Romaynes as of the  
souldyers. There was not that any  
care taken howe to make resistens, but  
heda to runne awayne. They fled by  
suche gates as were furthest from the  
emye. Diogenes the Captayne for  
as muche as he sawe there was none  
other remedye, yssued oute of Rome  
wyth parte of his souldyers and toke  
his waye toward Centumelles. To  
rile, pat supposinge as muche before  
(for all the rest of the towne were lost  
& there was no more left them to flye  
to but onely that) laide an ambushe  
for him by the waye into y which Dio-  
genes falling lost a great parte of his  
souldiers & himself beyng sore wound-  
ed had much a doe to escape wyth his  
life. There was at Rome among other  
Cap.

The valiant  
doinges of  
captain Paule,

# Gothes in Italy. 157.

Captaine one Paule of Sicilia, cap-  
taine of a trope of hozsmen. He in this  
most troublesome nyght after he had  
skirmished with his enemies in diuers  
places of the Citie in the taking ther-  
of, at length recovered hymselfe with  
his hozsmen vnto Adrians Tumber,  
Asone as it was day light the Gothes  
swarming aboute the Citie (at what  
tyme that the Capitoll Esquille & al þ  
rest of þ city was take) there was hard  
feyghting still at Adrians tumber. For  
Paule had .CCCC. hozsmen with  
the whiche he valiantly defended the  
Tumber and the bydge abioynynge  
thereto. In so muche that he slew ma-  
nye of the Gothes in the sky, manye dy-  
pon the bydge, & drane the rest a good  
way of. The whych Totilas behol-  
ding caused his men to retyre, & wyl-  
not (as he) byc the destruatō of these mē  
with the bloodshed of any of my people  
I will dispatch the sitting still & neuer  
trouble my selfe for the matter, conside-  
ring that neither they nor their hozses

1578 M. b. haue

Of the warre of the  
haue, wherby to sustaine their lines un  
till to morrow. Thus hauing called his  
men fro the skirmishe, and set a strong  
watch against the tumber & the bridge,  
he commaunded y<sup>e</sup> no man shuld molest  
or disquiet them y<sup>e</sup> were beleaged. Paul  
& his band of horsmen haapng fasted  
all that day & the nyght following wout  
meate or drinke, the next day beganne  
to consult what was best to be doone.  
Where were y<sup>e</sup> gaue counsel to endure  
the sieghe to ho<sup>r</sup>s flesh. But this deuise  
semed horrible for the lothsomnes of y<sup>e</sup>  
vncustomed feeding. Hope to escape  
by flyght there was none, the Wyther  
besetting the on all sides round about  
ready at receipt to cut the of. So there  
remained no shift but to yeld, & that se  
med both perillous and dishonorable.  
And therfore Paule taking vpon hym  
to speake said in this wise. My fellows  
& companions in armes which way so  
euer we turne vs, ye see we are vnto  
to an better exigent. For there is no  
waye to escape by flyght, the enemies  
enueil

The wordes  
of Paule to  
his souldiers.

enuincing vs round about with these  
 arguments; and taking so good heed to vs.  
 And to yeld our selues to them, besides  
 the dishonour & contumelies of the same;  
 we are like to be horribly tormented &  
 rent i pieces. For the cruelty of these bar-  
 barous people is not wont to be toler-  
 ted in any simple kind of death. As to a  
 wilde the dogge to fede vpon horse flesh;  
 let the doe it that lyke to be reasonable.  
 I cannot see what reason oughte to per-  
 suade vs vnto so great difference whi-  
 ch is utterly destitute of any such hope  
 wherof. that like a dogge to feed vpon  
 bothe so; feare of death we haue not the  
 paine ourselves to dye wthan hande our  
 selues but a stronge. And I am not yet  
 either to yeld or to denie vs; to stande  
 for hunger. I count it the property of  
 shee that haue neither hurt nor blood  
 in the. But wherof which are newe of  
 our handes; I am contented wth feightning  
 our honorable death is rather to be en-  
 dured then a dayes full life. . gill  
 noqq

And



## Of the battell of the

And therefore let us in such wise be,  
that we may haue ourselues in the blood  
of our enemies & not die but conquer.  
Let not our enemies laugh at our de-  
struction but weep. Neither let beholds  
upon shotes to be hit by them, but  
let us with our weapons cut them.  
For what can the despit of a few yeres  
profit us: sythen as that if we should es-  
cape all our dole, yet are we sure we  
shall die ere it be longe after. Gloys  
may lengthen mens daies, but nature  
cannot. And thus we put ourselues forth to  
die therefore to an honorable death,  
the which our enemies as well as  
our countrymen may wonder at and  
reioyce with the eternall payes to the sky.  
The horsemen encouraged with these  
wordes bowed themselves to death.  
And there upon embracing and kiss-  
ing one another they prepared them-  
selues to the battell with heart and de-  
termined to spend their lynes man-  
fully. The purpose was to runne  
upon

Upon the Gothes that warded next  
 into them, and to bestowe they: lyues  
 in the slaughter of they: enemies.  
 When Dotilas sawe them thus bent  
 to trye the worst, for feare leade  
 the desperate churche of them should  
 doe the Gothes more displeasure, then  
 otherwile so small a number were a-  
 ble to doe, he sent an herault to them  
 offering them choise whether they  
 would departe with they: lyues lea-  
 uing they: hylle and armout behynd  
 them, or elles retayning all theyll serue  
 bent in hys warres in lyke estate with  
 other of hys souldiers. When the  
 hoysmen heard that they were bette  
 glad, and at the same tyme to leade all  
 that euer they had & to goe to Constan-  
 tinople. But afterward considering  
 long tounce, and the daungers that  
 might happen by the waye, they re-  
 turned their answers & chose to abyde all  
 in Dotilas, sayng their Captaine  
 Paul & Spudus are Maurien. Whose  
 they as much as they had wife and  
 chil.

Fortune frow-  
 neth the cou-  
 ragious,

Totilas she-  
weth himself  
earnest in re-  
paring and  
peopling of  
Rome.

## Of the death of the

collage at home, desired to depart. And  
Totilas helping them liberally with  
bribe & other necessities sent them a-  
gain to Constantinople. Furthermore  
he commaunded no man should be  
so hardy as to offer any wrong to any of  
thoother souldiers in garrison that had  
taken sanctuary in the church. Toward  
the Citie of Rome he neither extended  
any crueltie, nor went aboute to make  
it desolate as he had done before. But  
made a serch for the Citizens therof in  
the tolines of Campanie & in other pla-  
ces, & reduced them home again. Fur-  
thermore he made in Rome tournaments  
and iustes, & such other princely pas-  
times as are wont to be done in courti-  
nage, & quiet Citiees with great cost and  
solemnitie, to the intent the Citizens  
should conceiue good hope, & haue a de-  
sire to the Citie. The houses also whi-  
ch had bene ouerthrowen or consumed  
in fire in the former desolation of the  
citty, he went about to reedifie and  
consolid and yett as drawen to repaire  
the

repayre. Finally he beliewed hawke as  
great a desyre of replenishing Rome  
as he had doome before of wasting and  
leaving it desolate. Thys so great mi-  
tabilitie and alteration of hys mynde,  
somme beleued to haue ryfen vppon a  
holw that he had made to the Apostles  
Peter e Paule, whose temples he myght  
seme to haue destroyed whē he destroyed  
hysse. Other some imputed it altoget-  
her to the profyte and commoditie of  
the warres. And dyuers doe repute  
that when Totilas latelpe before he-  
sired the frenche kynges daughter  
in marriage, aunsweere was made  
hys that he was not kyng of Ita-  
lye when he had subuerted the Cytye  
of Rome. The which want (men  
saye) altered hys mynde to the re-  
payringe of the Cytye. But what  
so euer was the cause of it, he ended  
hysse to repayre and buylde agayne  
the Cytye of Rome. After thys he  
prepared to make a vyage into Sicill.  
Jmoss yd nedd allomms D yd 21am  
4200000

## Of the waere of the



For the furniture wherof he builded  
him a great flete of Gallies, & made  
a greate number of hopes and hulkes  
while he was making preparation for  
that same, he determined to bessege both  
by water and by lande Centimucellus  
whiche one Citie was not yet coming  
vnder his subiection. Captayne of  
that piece was Diogenes who (as is  
before mencioned) escaped lately from  
Rome. He had gathered to him a good  
stronge companie of men of warre.  
Therefore at suche tyme as the Go-  
thys the acutie came thither and had en-  
camped theselues nere vnto the walls  
of the towne. Totilas sending an offi-  
cer of Armes to him, commaunded him  
either to come & feght it out w<sup>th</sup> his po-  
wer against the gothes, or els to yeld vp  
the towne vnto hi. For it was not for him  
to loke for any help at Iustinians hand  
considering he neuer releued Rome at  
the while it was besseged, onles per-  
chance he thought the imperour w<sup>ld</sup> set  
more by Centimucellus then by Rome.

totilas som-  
moneth cent-  
mucellus.

Diogenes

Diogenes replied therunto saying, that as for to fyghte with hym he was not mynded at that time, and as for to yeld by the towne saving his honour and fidelitie he coulde not, before he had sente to knowe the Emperours pleasure, and to desyre helpe. Whereuppon forasmuche as he seemed to speake that which was honest and reasonable they fel to composition, that onlesse the Emperour after warnyng geuen, wold rescue the towne by himself or by his deputie, Diogenes should surrender it at a certayne daye. And Totilas shoulde not in the meane season by any meanes moleste or dysquiet hym. For the assurance of these Articles Hostages were deliuered, and vppon thys agreement Totilas brake by his siege.

The.v. Chapter.

¶ Totilas making warre in Sicill besiegeth Siracuse, a new Lieutenant is sent from the Emperour into Italy.

¶

When

Totilas maketh warre in Sicill.

## Of the warre of the

**W**hen all thynges were now in a readinesse that were to be prepared. Totilas turned hymselfe to the warres in Sicill, commaundyng that his shippes shuld be ready at hand in the narrowe seas of Sicill. He hymself went by land vnto Rhegium, purposing to haue wonne the towne by force. Captaynes of the towne were Teremund and Imere placed there by Belisarius not longe before. Who diuerse & sundry tymes repulsed the Gothes to their great losse, attemptyng to wyne y<sup>e</sup> towne by assault. By meanes wherof Totilas despayning to get it by violence, determined with long continuance of hys siege to subdue them by famyshment. And therefore leauyng a number of the Gothes about it, he conueyed all the reast of hys armye by water to wyne Tarent, the which he easily obteyned. From thence wastyng ouer into Sicil, after y<sup>e</sup> he had eyther by force of Armes or els by composition gotten into his hand certayne of y<sup>e</sup> lesser townes,



toluues, at length he besieged Siracuse both by sea & by land. By that tyme the

The syege of Siracuse.

Gothes which (as ye heard before) wer sent among the Picentes against John & Valerian, hauing associated greate ayde vnto them and gotten the vpper hand in diuerse conflyctes, toke the Citie Arimine. And in another encounter not farre from Rauenna, they slew Were Captayne of the Efurians wpyth all hys hoste. Moreover Teremund & Imere whiche were besieged in the towne of Rhegium, for want of victuals were fayne to yelde themselves & the towne to the Gothes. All these thynges being declared to the Emperour at one instant, namely the taking of Rhegium, Tarent, and Arimine, and the passyng of Totilas into Sicill, made hym vtterly astonyed to heare of so many misfortunes at once. And ther vpon he denounced one Germa his cousin Germaine by y fathers side captaine of y warres in Italy agaynst y Gothes commaunding great preparation to be

x.ij.

made

A new Lieue-  
tenant sente  
into Italy fro  
thempour,

**O**f the warre of the  
made for y same. ~~Wh~~ he y same hereof,  
was blowen into Italy, it greatly abas-  
shed y enemye & recōforted hys frends.  
For thys Germā was a man of a hault  
courage, and of no lesse wysedome and  
pollicye, wonderfull lyberall, and be-  
rye welbeloued both wyth the people  
and wyth the souldyers. Besydes  
thys he had after the death of Alitigis  
taken to wyfe Mathasuta the nece of  
Kyng Theoderych, the whiche thyng  
wonne hym the hartes of the Gothes:  
and therefore as the fame of hym was  
great, so was he greatly loked & longed  
for in Italy.

The.vi. Chapter.

¶ Diogenes dalayeth with Totilas in deliue-  
ryng vp of Centmucelles accordyng to cō-  
position. The newe Lieutenent of I-  
taly, dyeth in hys waye whose sonnes are  
commaunded to prosecute theyr fathers  
charge.

The Sclauines

**W**hen German was nowe in Ill-  
ricke, the nation of the Sclauines  
hauiug passed y riuer of Danow,  
inuaded

Invaded the provinces of the Emperre of Rome. A kynde of people cruell and outragius beyonde all measure, whose turningg themselves toward Macedonie and Thrace, put Justinian in suche a feare, that he commaunded German to stay his iourney into Italy. Through this taryans the Gothes had leysure to do what they lyst in Italy and Sicill.

In the meane season came the daye appointed that Diogenes should haue deliuered Centmucelles, wherupon Totilas sendyng vnto hym required hym to performe hys promyse. Diogenes alledged that Germane was newly created Captayne of the warres in Italye. By reason whereof he sayd the state of thynges was wholly altered, so that it laye not in his power to yelde & to twayne, seing & Lorde & proper owner of it was on hys iourney & would with in two or three daies be in Italy. Totilas was besieging Siracuse in Sicill, and the Gothische men of warre skowring through the whole countrie, made haucke of al

The answer  
of Diogenes  
to Totilas for  
Centmucelles

Fig. thinges

## Of the warre of the

thynges . In Italy Rauenna, An-  
 chon , Hydunt , and Centinucelles  
 wpth certayne other towne remained  
 still imperiall. The Gothes helde all  
 the reast. One only hope stayed them,  
 namely the comynge of German, the  
 whyche also fayled them . For wher-  
 as he was sore longed for in Italye,  
 he was taken with a disease, and to the  
 great sorowe of all y were belonging  
 to hym dyed in Illiricke. German had  
 two sonnes whom he led with hym in-  
 to Italy. When dyd the Emperour co-  
 maunde to procede with their fathers  
 enterpryse, ioyntly together with theyr  
 kynseman John Vltalian the Captaine  
 so well knowen in Italy. For John had  
 maryed the daughter of German. John  
 therfore & the sonnes of German taking  
 the charge of the army vpon them, came  
 vnto Salons. And forasmuche as wynt-  
 er was at hand they determyned to a-  
 byde that season there, & in the begyn-  
 ning of the nexte spring to passe ouer to  
 Rauenna. About the same tyme well

The death of  
 Germane.

nye

nye, Liberius being sente from them, perour wyth a nauye entered into Syracuse, maugre the Gothes that kepte their station in the hauen to prohibyte their arriuall. Howbeit for doubt of scarcety of victualls whyche so greate a number was soone lyke to cause in a Citye besieged, he purposed to goe his way agayne: and therfoze wyth in a fewe dayes after hys commyng he tooke shipping agayne and departyng from Syracuse arryued at Panorme.

**The,vi,Chapter**

¶ Narses is sente agayne Lieuerennant into Italye wyth a greate power and greate treasure, Totilas sendeth a nauye into Grece to infeste those countryes, and besygeth Aucon in Italye. The Captaynes of Totilas are ouercome on the sea by the Imperialls and Aucon is rescued. The Gothes receaue another overthrow vpo the land, after the whiche certain Gothishe Captaynes become imperiall.

## Of the warre of the

Narſes marcheth with an inestimable power to Rauenna and from thence towardes Rome in the whiche journey he vanquisheth a Captayne of the Gothes and killeth hym at Arimine. He encountereth with Totilas who in the ſame conſlicte is ſlayne and Teias created kynge of Gothes in hys ſteade.

Narſes is made the Emperours Lieutenannt in Italy.

**I**n the meane whyle the Emperour altering hys purpose, made hys Eunuich Narſes Lieutenannt general of the warres in Italy, making hym large promyſes of men and mony. Also he wrote to John that he ſhoulde not paſſe into Italy, but tary ſtil at Salons & there abyde the commyng of Narſes. Narſes therfore taking the charge courageouſly vpon him, endeouored to leuiſe a great power from all places. To the perſormance whereof greatly anapled hys fauour & authoritie. For he was one of the Emperours preuis Counſel and ruled hym in manner as he lyſte, & he had greate frendſhip and Alliance with the Kinges and the great Princes of

# Gothes in Italy. 165.

of the Barbarous nations. When hys furniture was in a full readinesse, and that he had commaunded hys men of warre to meete hym all in Illiricke, as he was outward on hys iourney, & was come to Philippople in Thrace, he was of necessity constrained to staie and abyde a tyme in the same place. For the Hunnes enterpng with a great armye into Macedonie & Thrace, made spoyle of all thyngs, & had closed hys way that he could not passe. At the length when one parte of the Hunnes was gone to Thessalonicke & the other to Constantinople, Parles went from thence and kept on his iourney. By this time Totilas (hearyng of the great preparature of his enemies) was returned into Italy. Leaning for Lieutenantes of the warres in Sicil foure of his captaines, & he hymself made prouisiō in Italy for all thynges that semed nedeful & requisite. And to the entent to vaunt hys power to the Grekes (as whoe shoulde say he was as well able to inuade them

Parles is stay-  
ed by the  
Hunnes.

Totilas fether  
a nauye into  
Grece.



## Of the warre of the

as they had bene to haue inuaded hi, he sent a great flete into Grece, commaundyng them to make as muche hauocke & spoyle of all thynges as they could ac-  
corbyng to the same commaundement thys nauye, spoiled fyrst Corfyra & the Iles adioynng therunto, & afterward aduenturyng vppon the mayne land, wasted and spoiled with fyre & sworde all the coast of Cypous, Acarnauia and Aetolia. And so keping still the seas, did cut of many Greke shippes by þ waye as they were sayling toward Italy and Illirium, in somuch y no shippe coulde styre abrode for them. Whyle these thynges were a doying in Grece, Totilas sendyng a freshe crewe of souldiers into the Countrye of the Picentes, commaunded that Aucon shoulde be besieged both by sea & land. He made thres Captaynes of thys enterpryse: Scipuar Adilas & Gothidil, to whom he gaue a flete of seuen and fortye Galleyes. Whē Aucon was thus besyged, there  
were

The besyeging  
of Aucon.

Were so whote assautes genen both by  
 sea and by land, that it stood in greate  
 perrill. Wherefore Valerian who had  
 the rule of Rauenna, forasmuche as he  
 thought hymselfe to weake to rescowe  
 them that were besyged, he wrote to  
 John Vitalia lying at Salons, reques-  
 ting hym to ioine wyth hym and so to  
 rescowe them together. John Al-  
 beit the Emperoure had geuen hym  
 commaundemente that he shoulde not  
 passe into Italye befoze the commyng  
 of Parles, yet notwithstanding for-  
 asmuche as he thought it agaynst his  
 honoure to lye still and looke on while  
 his companions were in suche leoper-  
 dye, he chose oute the beste men in  
 all his hoste and embarkyng them in  
 eyghtene shippes, set out of Salons  
 and sayled towarde Rauenna. As  
 he was in his waye Valerian met him  
 wyth twelue galleyes well decked and  
 furnished to fight. When the Captaines  
 had communed betwene themselues,  
 and

## Of the warre of the

and by the aduise of such as were about them had determined as seemed best, they sayled with their whole nauie together agaynst their enemyes. And whē they came nere vnto Aucon, they dreyne to the shore at a place which the inhabiteurs do call Duasse. The whiche thyng assone as the Gothishe Captaynes perceaued, they also addreßing themselves to the encounter furnished their nauie with the beste souldiers þ they coulde chose, & when they had put themselves in a readinesse, launched forth & set themselves in good order agaynst their enemyes. The Gothishe shippes wer in number seuen & fortye, & the Grekes were thirtie, Captaynes whereof were John and Valerian, and Captaynes of the Gothishe nauie were Adilas & Gothidull: for Scipuar abode with the reast of the armye to keepe the Camp. Wherefoze after that the Captaynes of eyther parte had encouraged their men, and with warlyke orations inflamed theyr myndes wyth hope of victorie

Battell on the  
sea betwene  
the Gothes &  
the imperialls

victorie, with eager stomackes they loy-  
 ned battell. At the very fyrst beginning  
 the encounter was fierce, meting with  
 stemme to stemme & eche endeuoꝝyng  
 to ouermatche other, and the matter  
 was handled with greate courage on  
 both partes. For there was not any one  
 in all that great companie whiche had  
 not hys handes full. Insomuch that the  
 matter was tryed wpyth dartes, Jau-  
 lyngs, pykes, and swordes as if it had  
 bene a battell vpon the land. Howbeit  
 in continuance the Gothe the nauie be-  
 ganne to go by the worse. For albeit  
 they were good men of their handes &  
 stowte warryours, yet forasmuche as  
 they wanted experiance in sea matters,  
 they troubled themselves. For in some  
 places they cluſtered so together, that  
 one had not roome to styꝝe by another,  
 and other some agayne to eschewe that  
 fault, disseuered themselves so far fro  
 the helpe of their companie, that their  
 enemyes had them alwayes at aduan-  
 tage. Whereas on the contrary part the  
 Grekes

Conning & ex-  
 perience pre-  
 uayleth a-  
 gainst force.

## Of the warre of the

Grekes wer greatly furthered through their connyng the good order of their Sea men there was no araye broken. A man could not haue sene among them any thzongyng , nor scatteryng , but y they were euer nere at hand to helpe their companye & to be helped of them. And therefore as reason was, at length they gatte the vpper hand. Some of the Goths the shippes were sunke w<sup>th</sup> their men of warre marriners & al. Many being wonne by fyne force were with incredible slaughter taken . The whiche whē the Gothes beheld, by and by they toke them to flight. There were no mo but ten of their shippes that escaped to land vnperished. The reast were either taken or ells drowied, there was made a great slaughter of the men in the battell and in the chace. They that escaped to land, dyd forthwith set their shippes on fyre , to the entent their enemyes shoulde not obtayne them , & returned into their Camp . Where they were stricken with such a feare , that they determined

The Gothes  
are vanquished and  
Aucō rescued

determined to breake vp their siege. Whereupon in all haste they forsooke their Campe and fled vnto Aurimum. John and Valerian enterpung into the haueu of Aucō with their victorious nauy to the great comfort and incredible reioyement of the Towneshemen, made hast to rpsflyng of the enemyes Camp. The which they findyng forsaken, caused all the victualls & artillery that they founde there to be conueyed into the citye. They theselues within fewe daies after departed, Valerian vnto Rauenna and John vnto Salons. Thys battell dyd soze discourage the hartes of y<sup>e</sup> Gothes, & was as it were a preparatiue of a greater ruine y<sup>e</sup> was toward them. For Totilas being not a little disquietted w<sup>th</sup> this losse pulled backe a greate part of his army out of Sicill. By meanes whereof Artauanes the Emperours Captayne subrogated in y<sup>e</sup> romie of Liberius haupng receaued bys nauy of hym, beganne to growe y<sup>e</sup> stronger in Sicill.

Fortune turneth agaynst  
he Gothes.

## Of the warre of the

The Gothes  
receave ano-  
ther discomfi-  
ture.

Insomuche that he not onely deliuered his confederates from h̄ besiegemente, but also besieged the Gothes in diuerse places in their owne towne. Moreover ere it was long after, an other naue of Grekes commyng vnloked for to the rescowe of the Crotoniens longe tyme besieged by the Gothes, rayled h̄ siege & discomfited their enemyes with great bloodshed & slaughter. The Gothes being dispersed fled some to Tarent, and some withdrew themselves into the next mountayne called Scyllaun, the which ouerthrowe together with h̄ former slaughter, dyd muche more discourage the hartes of the Gothes. In especially forasmuch as there went a great brute through out all Italy of Marcellus comyng & of his preparatiō for h̄ wars, what great furniture he brought with him, & that ther began already to spring by certain rebellions against Totilas. For one Reguaris a noble mā among the Gothes Captaine of Tarent, and Morras captayne of Acheruse, revolted to

Reuoltyng to  
the part of the  
imperialles.



to the Emperour with theyr colonies  
and souldiers wherof they had charge. The power  
Furthermore tydings was brought of Narfes.

of another insurrection agaynst the  
Gothes in Sardinia. Whyle they  
were in this estate in Italy, Nar-  
fes assemblynge bys power in the  
wynter season, addrested hymselfe  
to his journey: he had suche an ar-  
mye of men, as scarce all the Cap-  
taynes beyng putte all together,  
broughte wyth them into Italpe du-  
ryng the whole tyme of this warre.  
For the Emperour gaue hym so large  
allowaunce of monye, and he hym-  
seife was so bountefull and lyberall in  
bestowing & distributing of the same, &  
he leuied a greater power not onely in  
Thrace & Grece, but also out of diuers  
other places. For he had entertained a  
houe five M. Lombardes notable mē  
of war by the consent of Albuine theyr  
kinge, and, MCCC. of the Gaultians.  
Furthermore there came vnto hym a  
great number of the Hunnes.

Albuine king  
of Lombard  
des.

Cumades a  
Persian,

## Of the warre of the

The Gothes  
receave ano-  
ther discomfi-  
ture.

Insomuche that he not onely deliuered  
his confederates from h̄ besiegemente,  
but also besieged the Gothes in diuerse  
places in their own towne. Moreover  
ere it was long after, an other nauie of  
Grekes commynge vnloked for to the  
rescoue of the Crotoniens longe tyme  
besieged by the Gothes, rayled h̄ siege  
& discomfited their enemyes with great  
bloudshed & slaughter. The Gothes be-  
ing dispersed fled some to Tarent, and  
some withdrew themselves into the  
next mountayne called Scyllaum, the  
which ouerthrowe together with h̄ for-  
mer slaughter, dyd muche more discour-  
rage the hartes of the Gothes. In espe-  
cially forasmuch as there went a great  
brute througħ out all Italy of Narses  
comynge & of his preparatiō for h̄ wars,  
what great furniture he brought with  
him, & that ther began already to spring  
vp certain rebellions against Totilas.  
Forone Reguaris a noble mā among  
the Gothes Captaine of Tarent, and  
Morras captayne of Acheruse, revolted  
to

Reuoltyng to  
the part of the  
imperialles.

to the Emperour with theyr solons  
and souldiers wherof they had charge. The power  
Furthermore tydings was brought of Narces.

of another insurrection agaynst the  
Gothes in Sardinia. While they  
ges were in this estate in Italy, Nar-  
ces assemblynge bys power in the  
wynter season, addressed hymselfe  
to bys Journey: he had suche an ar-  
mye of men, as scarce all the Cap-  
taynes beyng putte all together,  
broughte wyth them into Italye du-  
ryng the whole tyme of this warre.  
For the Emperour gaue hym so large  
allowaunce of monnye, and he hym-  
seife was so bountefull and lyberall in  
bestowing & distributing of the same, &  
he leued a greater power not onely in  
Thrace & Grece, but also out of diuers  
other places. For he had entertained a  
boute five M. Lombardes notable me-  
of war by the consent of Albuine theyr  
kinge, and, M. of the Gualians.  
Furthermore there came into hym a  
great number of the Hunnes.

Albuine king  
of Lombar-  
des.

Cumades a  
Persian,

## Of the warre of the

Also there was one Cumades a Persian that had bene trapped bype in the Romaine warres; who with a balliant band of Persians resorted vnto hym. Moreover there came to hym a warlike yong gentleman called Asuades with foue hundred seyghthyng men of the Scythes: and John surnamed Phagas with an hoste of the Grekes and Thracians. Besydes this, John Italian, and the sonnes of Germaine serued hym with theyr armyes. Besides therefore hauyng this so great an hoste, as soone as the springe tyme approached, passed oute of Illyricum throughthe Dalmatia and Liburnia and so coastynge aboute the elbowe of the sea came by lande into Italye, not stayinge anye where vntyll he was amonge the Venetians. There were twoo wayes by the whyche he myghte handsomelye passe from the Venetians. The one by the Adriaticke sea, the other throughthe the mayne lande, bothe whyche seemed to

to haue manye litters . For by the  
 Seas syde the Ryuer Athesis maketh  
 greate Lakes whych fall into the  
 Sea in manye Chanelles, and the ri-  
 uer do beyng deuyded into manye  
 streames, dothe in dyuers places in-  
 terrupte the Journey, wyth manye  
 quampers and moorye groundes,  
 so that an Armys can not well be led  
 that waye wythoute greate trouble.  
 Agayne in the waye by the mayne  
 Lande one of the Gothes called Te-  
 las placed at Aeron wyth an Armys  
 by Totilas, had intercepted his pas-  
 sage ouer the Ryuers of Athesis and  
 Po. These twoo streames runnyng  
 downe from the Alpes whych denyde  
 Italy from Fraunce and Germanye,  
 doe fall into the Adriatycke sea. And  
 therefore they that wyl passe from  
 Venice, muste needes passe ouer them  
 eether by the Seas syde where as be  
 Lakes and meres fallynge by dyuers  
 Chanelles into the Sea, and where  
 the mouthes of Po doe ouerthwart  
 them

Teist after-  
 ward king of  
 the gothi.

## Of the warre of the

them betwene Rauenna & Clodius  
diches: or els they must passe the same  
rivers in the mayne land, where they  
be great & vndeuided, and where they  
may easily be stopped of their passage, if  
there be any body to withstand them.  
Wherfore seeing y<sup>e</sup> Helas was at Cle-  
ron the which is a citie standing vpon  
the Riuer Arhelis, & had a power suf-  
ficient to let him of his passage. Parles  
left the way throught the maine land,  
& chose to go by the coast of the Adria-  
ticke sea, both bicause it was without im-  
peachment of enemyes, & besides that,  
was nearer way then thother. And so  
marchig by Clodius diches & the felds  
of Adria, and passing ouer the Riuer  
whersoener they crossed his way, some  
where with bydges & somewhere w<sup>th</sup>  
botes, at length he came with al his ar-  
mie vnto Rauenna. Where Captaine  
Valerian and Captaine Iustine w<sup>th</sup>  
their bandes joyned themselves with  
Parles. There were in Itayle a great  
number of old souldiers, who by reaso<sup>n</sup>  
the

Narles com-  
ming to Ra-  
uenna.

the Emperour was behind hand with  
their wages for a longe tyme together  
were offended in theyr hartes, and  
would not goe forth to the warres.

Barles payed theym all theyr wages,  
whereby he healed theyr griefes and  
gaue theym courage agayne.

Hauynge spent nyne daies in dooinge  
these thynges and in refreſhing his

armye at Rauenna, he remoued from  
thens & marched toward Rome. The

ſame tyme was one Alſoxilas captayne  
of Arimine as notable a warrior as

was among al the gothes. Who (allone  
as the ſoldard of Barles hoſte was

come into the felde of Arimine) went  
about to ſtoppe them of their paſſage.

The Ruer that runneth by Arimine  
was ryſen wyth rayne, vppon the

whyche was a brydge ſo harde vnder  
neath the Colonne that it was an eaſy

matter to ſtoppe the paſſage.

Alſoxilas therefore pſſuyng out of A-  
rimine beſore that anye number of

A conflict at  
Arimine.



## Of the warre of the

hys enemyes had passed the Kyper, sette hymselfe at defence on the further syde, and encountered wyth hys enemyes euen harde vnder the walls of the towne. In the whych conflycte a certayne man of Armes of the Crutians feghtyng wyth Asdylas hande to hand slewe hym, and hys souldiers discouraged wyth the deathe of theyr Caplayne, retized fearefully into the towne. The head of Asdylas was broughte vnto spales, at the whyche spales reioyce and takynge it for a token of good lucke, that the sheefe of hys enemyes was slayne by hys men at the fyfthe conflycte, kepte on hys waye full of good hope and comfort. For albeit he had a good furtheraunce to the takynge of Arimine at the same instant, yet notwithstanding he wold not tary about it to the entent so great an army shuld not be letted about the sege of one towne, & therefore he passed by Arimine & continued on his iourney. Totilas hauing intelligens  
of

of those things y<sup>e</sup> were done amonge y<sup>e</sup> Venitians, & vnderstanding of the passage of Charles and of his coming to Rauēna, although almost at his whole power were at that time w<sup>th</sup> Teias, yet notwithstanding he determined to encounter w<sup>th</sup> Charles, the which he did, & in the battell was slayne for his labour. As many of the Gothes as escaped frō the field, fled ouer the river Po & assembled together at Pavia & thereabouts. In the which place as they consulted of making a newe governour of theyr people, Teias was preferred by the iudgement of all men & chosen king of the Gothes. After that he was thus installed in the siege roial, by & by he toke to his vse the treasures that Totilas had laid by at Pavia, diligently going in hand to repaire his power, to raise a newe army, to geue & distribute horse & armour, & to doe all other things vigilantly, and moreover to send to the Frenchmen to allure them to take his part in the warres.

The death of Totilas.

Teias is created kinge of the gothes.

# Of the warre of the

## The .viii. Chapter.

Narſes continuinge his journey receiveth  
Narma and Perus, and winneth Rome by  
assaulte, wherevpon the gothes extend a  
maruelous crueltye against the Romaine  
prysoners.

**N**ARSES hearinge thereof, com-  
manded Valerian to be as it  
were in garrison wth his band  
about the citye, to the intent the  
Gothes shoulde not craue to saue a  
bronde at theys pleasure wthoute  
fearre and he hymselfe wth the rest of  
his armye marched to Rome. In his  
waye Spaurina was yeldeo vnto him  
and he graunted the men of Spolet  
certayne of his souldiers for theys de-  
fence vntill they myght repayre theys  
walles whiche Corilas had beaten  
downe. Also he sent to Perus to som-  
mon that Colone, there were in Pe-  
rus two Captaynes Metegidius and  
Alithus. Altho beynge at variance be-  
twene theymselues dyde sonnyes  
wayes

For Melegidius conuited to  
 yelde vpp the Cytie. But Vlitus  
 beyng gylty of the treason and the  
 murder lately committed agaynst  
 Cyprian, stroue agaynst it, for feare  
 to be punished accordyng to hys de-  
 sertes. By meanes whereof there rose  
 contention, in the whyche Vlitus  
 was slayne, and Veruse was yelded  
 vpp to Parles by Melegidius. After  
 thys Parles proceedynge to Rome be-  
 sieged it. The Cytie of Rome at  
 that tyme stode in thys estate. The  
 Citizens beyng afflicted wth the  
 former calamities resorted not in any  
 greates number into the Cytie. We  
 should haue seene whole strettes em-  
 ty and neither man nor woman dwel-  
 lynge therein, and the houses ey-  
 ther fallen downe or elles bourned.  
 For Votilas not able to repayre it a-  
 gayne spectallie the Cyprians beyng  
 so sore wasted and in manner de-  
 stroyed.

Melegidius  
 and Vlitus  
 Captaines of  
 the Gothes.

## Of the warre of the

The Gothes therfore dissenting their  
own weaknes that they were not suf-  
ficient to defend the whole Citie, had  
chose a piece of ground not very bigge  
here vnto Adrians tumber, the whych  
they strongly fortified with a diebe & a  
rampyre & loyned it to the wall of the  
rest of the Citie. Into the whych place  
they conueied all their munitions and  
artillerie vsing it as a fort or a holde.  
Neuertheles they did not utterly aban-  
don by the citie, but defended it as well  
as they could, Parces therfore deter-  
mining to winne the citie, assaulted it  
in diuers places at ones, And the Go-  
thes resorting to the same places stood  
at defence from h walls. While these  
thinges were a doing, another compa-  
nie of the souldyers of Parces stealing  
aboute to the further syde & fyndynge  
no bodye there, crept by their ladders  
and skalled the walles. The noyse  
that was made therevppon bewailed  
that the Cytie was taken, and the Go-  
thes leauing theyr defence, some fled  
to

Narces takeih  
Rome.

to the towne of Boitua & some wyth-  
drew theselues to the forte at Adrians  
tumbe. By thys meanes Parles gate  
Rome, & after he had a whyle besy-  
ged the hold, he toke it by composition.  
There were in Campanie many Se-  
natours & Senatours chyldren, whom  
Totilas for the great authoritie & fa-  
uour that their auncestours had, wold  
not suffer to retourne into the Cytie.  
Besydes them, there were dyuers of  
the nobillite whych the Gothes had  
sent thither vpon mistrust. All the whi-  
che, wyth their chyldren and kynnsfolke  
the gothes did put to death. Forsooner  
Totilas had chosen CCC. yongme as  
it had bene to serue him in hys wars, but  
in very deede to keepe the for pledges,  
and therefore he sent them on a byage  
beyond the Riuier Po. The which like-  
wyse after that Rome was come into  
hys hands of Parles, were put to death  
euery chone by the Gothes.

The crueltie  
of the gothes  
towards the  
Romaines.

# Of the warre of the

## The ix. Chapter,

The falschoode and treason of a gothishe Captayne named Regnaris. Narses recouereth Portua. Teia kinge of the gothes and the sayd Narses encampe one againste another by a Ryuers syde the watter runnyng betwixt them wythoute anye battell vntyll after longe tyme Teia hauyng through the treason loste hys shippes and by meanes thereof beyng destitute of victualle and artillerye to keepe that grounde anye longer remoueth to a hyll not farre from the same place, where beyng in manner besyged by Narses, he setteth hys men in battell raye and geuyng force assaulte vppon hys enemyes after a whole dayes feyghtyng and manye a noble deede of prowesse by hym doone he is at laste slaine and the battell ceaseth for that nyghte the whyche begynneth agayne the nexte mornyng, contrarynewyng all the daye lykenys vntyll it be darcke nyghte. Wherevpon they sende commissioners vnto Narses for peace whyche vppon reasonable condicions is graunted and the warres in Italye are broughte to a synall ende and quietnesse.

About



**A**BOUTE the same tyme The falsched  
 Regnaris Captayne of La- and treason  
 rent when he hearde that Te- of Reguaris.

las was made kynge and that  
 the Freneheimen woulde comme to  
 his ayde, repented hym that he  
 hadde renoulted to the Emperour,  
 and determyned to tounche to the  
 Gothes agayne. Powe to the ci-  
 tente he woulde recouer agayne his  
 hostages, he ymagined this sub-  
 teltie. He sent to Macurius Cap-  
 tayne of Hydunt, despynginge hym  
 of ayde agaynst an armie of the  
 Gothes wherthe he falschlye alledged  
 were commynge agaynst hym.  
 Macurius mystrustynge no deceipts  
 sente hym fyttye of his souldyers  
 to Tarent, whome Regnaris im-  
 mediatelye caste into pryson, and wrote  
 vnto Macurius that yf he woulde

haue

## Of the battell of the

battell his souldiers, he should deliuer  
 hym the hostages that he had of hym in  
 keeping. Upon the receipt of this mes-  
 sage, Pacurius was sore troubled in  
 his mynde, and leauyng a few men  
 behynde hym for the defence of his  
 piece, went wth the rest of his armye  
 agaynst Regnaris. Regnaris ma-  
 kyng no delaye in the matter, put to  
 deathe all the souldyers that he had  
 receyued, and then ysuyng oute of  
 Larent to encounter wth Pacurius  
 was putte to the worse, and being dy-  
 uen to fye with the losse of most of his  
 souldyers when he coulde not reco-  
 uer to Larent so that the wales were  
 forelaped, he gate hym to Acheruse.  
 In the meane season Parles sendyng  
 his armye to Portua, besieged the  
 towne & at length reuouered it. After  
 this he assailed Centinucelles and in  
 likewise brought it in subiectio. Tetias  
 also ceased not to sollicit the Frenche  
 nation and to allure them to take his  
 parte in the warres, promysinge them  
 some

Narles reco-  
 uereth Por-  
 tua.

Sometyme monnye and sometyne co-  
pertener theyppc of the kyngdome of I-  
talye ; But the Frenchemen had al-  
readye determyned not to entermyle  
themselues in anye suche warres. By  
meanes whereof the Gothes were dis-  
appointed of theyr hope . Totilas in  
the tyme of hys lyfe had gathered to-  
gyther a greate Treasure at Panye,  
& had layd by no small masse of monny  
in the foystresse of Cume , & had made  
his brother Captaine of the same foys-  
tresse . When Paries had vnderstan-  
ding therof, he sent part of hys armye  
to bessege Cume , and he hymselfe a-  
bydyng till at Rome, endeouored to  
repayre the Cytye and to replenshe  
it wyth people . And to the entente  
that the Gothes that were beyonde  
the Rhyner Wo shoulde not rescowe  
Cume or anye other of the places that  
were besseged , he commaunded  
John Vitalian and Philimunt wyth  
theyr bandes to abyde in Petruria, to  
set

## Of the warre of the

sette themselves agaynste the enemye  
at the fyrste approche and cutte them  
off ere they came anye further . For  
Ticias when he perceyued that Cumie  
was beleeged , determined fullye to  
goe and rescue it . Whereupon set-  
tyng date of Maie , by longe and  
ouerthwarte iourneyes he ledde his  
hoste by the shoore of the upper sea and  
so throughe the countreyes of the Vi-  
centes and Marses into Campanye.  
The whiche when Marses vnderstood  
he called John wyth his bande oute of  
Petruria . After whose commynge  
he marched forwarde into Campanye  
wyth his whole power fullye purpo-  
sing to encounter wyth Ticias . There  
is a hill in Campanye called Vesu-  
uius oute of the toope wherof often-  
tymes ryseth thicke smoke and flames  
of fyre . But in the foote of the same  
mountain are springs of swete water  
the whiche doe make a brooke called  
Dracon that runneth not farre from  
the Citie Puceria.

The moun-  
taine Vesu-  
uius.

This

thys bracke is not very gode ; but it  
 toke hope that neyther boxerman nor  
 faterman can passe it. Aboute thys  
 ryer both armyes encamped. Par-  
 ses on the hyther syde and Elias on  
 the further side ; the riuier running in  
 the mydden betwene the both. Where  
 was but one bydye ouer it ; & that had  
 the Gothes taken. By meanes wherof  
 it laye in their hande to chosse whither  
 they wold fight or not fight. The ar-  
 mies stode in thys sorte by the space of  
 two monethes, so that parties & bds in  
 which were desyous to come to hande  
 furdies ; could not by any meanes come  
 to their enemyes, only they came to the  
 riuers side from both Campes & shotte  
 at euerye and thre in battles one at ano-  
 ther. Also there were fought many ch-  
 bates and many challenges were per-  
 formed on both sydes during the sayd  
 tyme, & the Gothes the soldiers passing  
 ouer the bydye to fight with the sold-  
 iers of Parses hande hand. The sea  
 was very nere at hand & the Gothes  
 might

Narles & Te-  
 las encamp to-  
 gether parted  
 with a riuier.

## Of the manner of the

had their shippes vpon the water which  
alwayes brought corne and victualles  
set it a land nere vnto them, & so when  
it was thus conueyed to the Camp. But  
after the time that their nauie through  
treason was losse, and that they coulde  
haue no more victualles and attillage  
brought to the by the sea, the Gothes  
were constrained of necessitye to dis-  
lodge fro that place. Whereupon for  
saking the bridge & the groundes by the  
rivers syde, they departed to the nexte  
hyll which the inhabitantes of the coun-  
treie do cal the mylke hyll. Parfau pur-  
suing them (so far as much as he could not  
assaye them by reason of the shepente  
of the hyll,) settled hymselfe about the  
foote of it. The Gothes being in the  
same place also as much oppressed with  
scarretye as they were before, determi-  
ned to put the matter in tryall by the  
sword. And thereupon putting them-  
selues in aray vpon the toppes of the hill,  
they descended from aboue & so synely  
assayed their enemies thynking no-  
thing

The Gothes  
lose their ship-  
pes, by treaso-  
ring

A cruel battel  
betwene the  
Gothes & the  
imperialls.

thyng leste, then of any such matter, as  
 somuch that they had not any pleasure to  
 order their battells or to encourage  
 their souldiers, but were fayne to sette  
 theselues against the enemye accordyng  
 as every mannes fortune had appoynt-  
 ed hym. And for because the Gothes  
 had left their hoxses & fought on fodes,  
 Partes dyd set his foremen also to en-  
 counter with them. The battell was  
 cruell & bloody in all places. For on the  
 one syde the Gothes fought obstinately  
 as men in despayre, & on the other syde  
 the souldiers of Partes were ashamed  
 to geue place being so many in number  
 as they were, in especially consydering  
 that but enen the other daye they had  
 compelled them to forsake their firste  
 campe, and had well nye besleged them  
 now in the hyl which they had fled to  
 for their refuge. Both parties being in-  
 censed with these perswasions, foughte  
 verye valiantly. I will not passe over  
 with silence the noble Demeano of  
 the Gothes in his bat-

The notable  
 prowesse &  
 courage of Te-  
 as king of the  
 Gothes,



## Of the worth of the

tell. For he bring enured as it were  
with an heretofore promise, made none  
put himselfe into the forefront of the  
battel among the foremost fighters. He  
was easie to be knowen from the rest  
by his goodly armour & his rich ap-  
parrell. In the left hand he helde a tar-  
get & in his right hand he brandished  
a Hauelyng. Whan that encountered a  
gagynst hym he strake stark dead, & yet  
partes came flying at him fro all sides.  
Doubte it he being of an incredible cou-  
rage and strength by his maruales in  
armes. At the length when his shilde  
stake full of partes so that he could not  
handsomely wield it, standing with his  
face towarde his enemyes & calling to  
his harnessebearer by name he chaus-  
ed hym with a loude voyce to bring  
hym another target. When it was  
brought vnto hym, he let stypp his old  
one, to haue taken the new in his hand,  
in the which chaunge it was his choice  
to receaue his death blowe by a dart  
that was sent at hym. By the toke he  
albeit

albeit he lost much blood yett stode  
standing like a most purfiant chey-  
on he neuer gaue foote backe nor ne-  
uer tourned his face, but standing  
floutly towarde his enemyes fought  
it oute as longe as he was able to  
stande on his legges, untill at length  
febled with travell and losse of bloude  
he fell downe flatte bypon his face.  
It was almost fyve of the clocke when  
T. C. dyed. And yett the O-  
thers were nothing at all dyscourage-  
d with the death of theyr kynge,  
but helde oute the battell untill it was  
myghte neuer gauging one foote backe.  
Fynallye when it was so darke that  
they coude not see, the battell ceased,  
being begonne at the sonne rysing.  
What myghte both the armyes wat-  
ched in theyr harnesse, and alsoone  
as the daye pered, they fell to figh-  
tyng a freyshe, continuing so till vnto  
the sonne going downe to the great  
slaughter of both partes. At length  
the Othres sente vnto Parles offer-  
ing

The death of  
T. C.

201  
Of the battle of the  
ryng to departe oute of italye in the  
would suffer them without impeache-  
ment to carrie such thynges as they  
had amonge with them. But if he  
would not graunt them this request,  
they said they would neuer leaue fly-  
tyng, as long as the breath was in  
their boodies. Then Charles had  
heard their demaundes, by the counsell of  
hys counsell he condescended unto the,  
to the intent he would not to the great  
perilous and losse of hys men, seek  
the advantage of hys desperate ene-  
myes. In the meane tyme aboute a  
thousande horsemen and suite of the  
Camp of the Gothes, and by greake  
tourneyes came into Dante and other  
townes beyond the ryuer Po. The  
resonne fell to a synall agreement with  
Charles, promysing to departe oute  
of italye, carrying nothing more than  
euery man hys owne, and neuer af-  
ter to make warre vpon the Romayne  
Empyre, prouyded alwayes that they  
themselves shoulde retayne still there  
freedome

**Gothes in Italy.** 180.

freedome and libertys wpythout any  
bondage or subiection to the Em-  
pyre. The whiche being done  
according to conenant, Mar-  
ses receaued Come & al  
other towne that held  
with the Gothes, and  
so ended the xxijth  
tenthe yeare of  
this warre.

**FINIS**